

Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry

# Forest Management Planning Manual

March 2017

Policy Division

Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch



# **FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING MANUAL**

Prepared under the Authority of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994

March, 2017

Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry

© 2017 Queen's Printer for Ontario  
Printed in Ontario, Canada

Publications and price lists are available from this office:  
Service Ontario Publications

300 Water Street  
P.O. Box 7000  
Peterborough, ON, K9J 8M5  
1-800-668-9938  
[www.serviceontario.ca/publications](http://www.serviceontario.ca/publications)

Telephone inquiries should be directed to the Service Ontario Contact Centre:

General Inquiry 1-800-668-9938  
Renseignements en Français 1-800-667-1840  
Fax (705) 755-1677

Cette publication hautement spécialisée {Forest Management Planning Manual} n'est disponible qu'en anglais conformément au Règlement 671/92, selon lequel il n'est pas obligatoire de la traduire en vertu de la Loi sur les services en français. Pour obtenir des renseignements en français, veuillez communiquer avec le ministère des Richesses naturelles et des Forêts au 1-800-667-1840.

Visit Ontario's Forests website at:  
<https://www.ontario.ca/page/forestry>

Visit the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry website at:  
<https://www.ontario.ca/page/ministry-natural-resources-and-forestry>

How to cite this manual:

OMNRF. March 2017. Forest Management Planning Manual, Toronto. Queen's  
Printer for Ontario. 462 pp

ISBN: 978-1-4868-0114-5 (Print)  
ISBN: 978-1-4868-0115-2 (PDF)

# 1 FOREWORD

## 3 The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

5 The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for  
6 Sustainable Forests that was approved by Cabinet in 1994. The framework sets broad  
7 direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest  
8 management. It helps to address climate change by ensuring Ontario's forests contribute  
9 positively to the global environment. This contribution is made through the application of  
10 the principles for sustaining forests.

11  
12

## 13 Overview of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

14

15 The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994* (CFSA) came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is  
16 enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information,  
17 operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and  
18 transitional provisions. The CFSA is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based  
19 values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The CFSA defines  
20 sustainability as long-term Crown forest health, and reflects the broad direction set out in  
21 the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests.

22  
23

## 24 A Manual Approach to Implementation of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

25

26 The CFSA requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest  
27 management in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section 68 of the  
28 Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29:

29

- 30 1. The Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM);
- 31 2. The Forest Information Manual (FIM);
- 32 3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM); and
- 33 4. The Scaling Manual (SM).

34

35 The FMPM is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest  
36 management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within the area of the undertaking, as  
37 defined in Schedule 1 of MNRF's Environmental Assessment Act Requirements for Forest  
38 Management on Crown Lands in Ontario, (2015) (Declaration Order MNR-75). This FMPM  
39 incorporates conditions 1 to 34 and 39(a) of Declaration Order MNR-75.

40

41 In accordance with the CFSA, forest sustainability will be determined in accordance with the  
42 approach described in the FMPM. The approach requires the identification of measurable  
43 indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management  
44 objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the

1 forest management plan (FMP), the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that  
2 the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has  
3 regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including  
4 recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the  
5 monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes,  
6 which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest  
7 management activities.

8  
9 The FIM describes the information requirements the MNRF has to support forest  
10 management. The FIM also provides for the sharing and exchange of forest-related  
11 information between the MNRF and Ontario's forest industry.

12  
13 The FOSM sets out the over-arching principles and accepted approaches for forest  
14 management, the standards for forest operations and silvicultural practices, the minimum  
15 qualifications for forestry workers, and the procedures for the evaluation of forest  
16 management in Ontario.

17  
18 The SM contains instructions and standards for the measurement of Crown forest resources,  
19 provides instructions for the authorized movement of Crown forest resources and sets out  
20 the requirements for conducting scaling audits.

## 21 22 **Manual Revision**

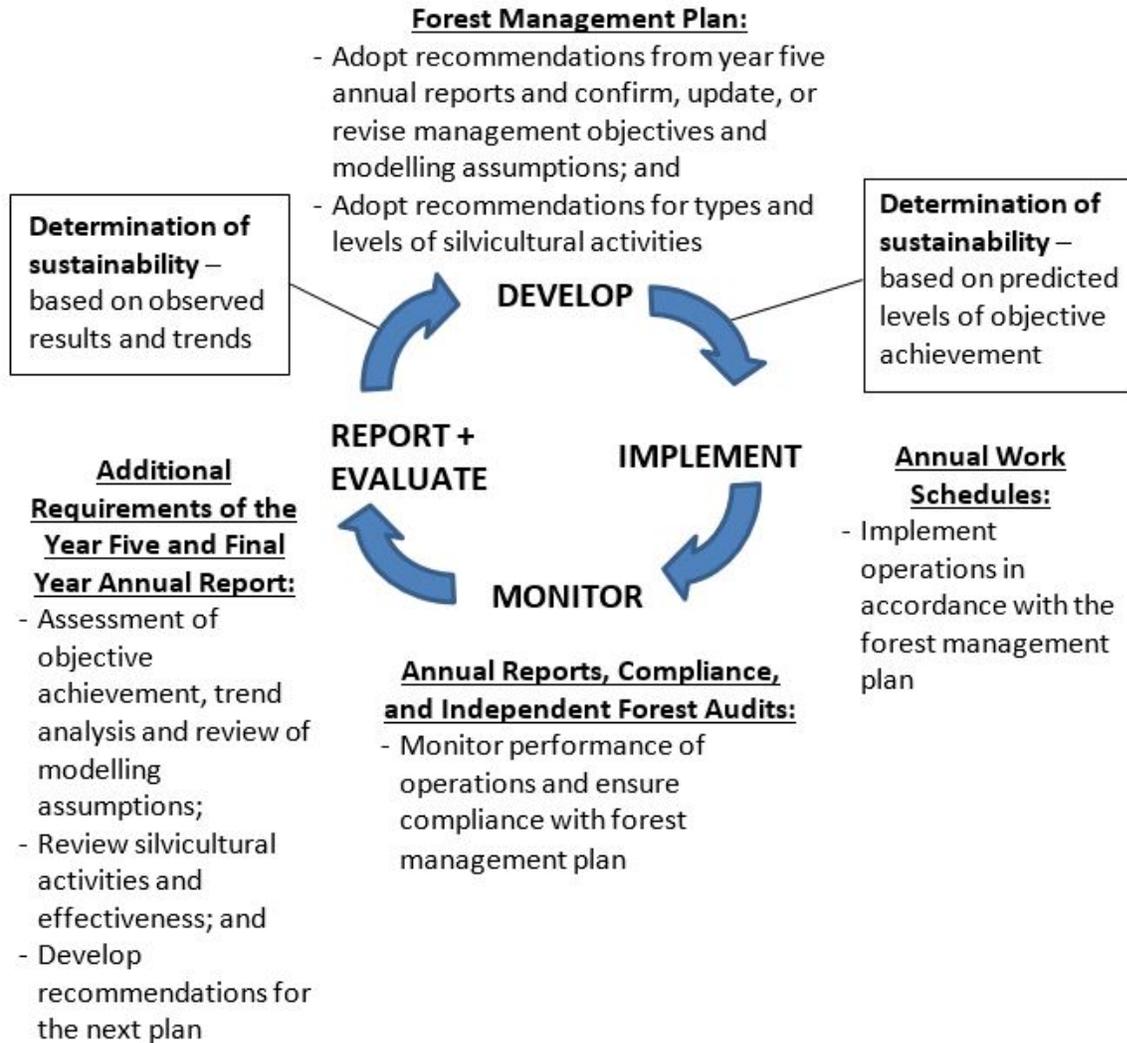
23  
24 The four manuals are revised, improved, and updated based on experiences in using the  
25 manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the manuals will be made  
26 in accordance with the CFSA regulation requiring public review and comment.

## 27 28 **Forest Management**

29  
30 Forest Management is conducted in an adaptive management cycle. A FMP is prepared by a  
31 plan author who is a registered professional forester, who certifies that the FMP provides for  
32 the sustainability of the Crown forest. The FMP is implemented as scheduled in the annual  
33 work schedule and as reported in the annual report. Following year five, the implementation  
34 of the FMP to date is assessed and a determination is made as to whether the  
35 implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest and  
36 recommendations for future planning are provided. The next FMP is prepared in  
37 consideration of recommendations from the year five annual report; changes to the forest  
38 condition; updates to science and policy; and specific efforts to confirm, update, or revise  
39 management objectives and practices.

40  
41 Figure 1 provides an overview of the adaptive management cycle as it pertains to the  
42 provision of forest sustainability in FMPs.

1 **Figure 1: Adaptive Management Cycle**  
 2



3  
 4 **Climate Change Considerations**

5  
 6 Ontario recognizes climate change as a challenge requiring government action. Ontario’s  
 7 Climate Change Strategy commits the province to contributing to global greenhouse gas  
 8 emission reductions by preparing for a changing climate and continuing research to help  
 9 understand climate change and its effect on the environment.

10  
 11 Ontario’s efforts to address climate change are focused on adaptation and mitigation.  
 12 Adaptation involves practices and behaviours to reduce vulnerabilities and risks associated  
 13 with climate change. Mitigation refers to efforts to reduce, or prevent emissions of  
 14 greenhouse gases into the atmosphere or increase sequestration.

15  
 16 Healthy, resilient forests are best able to resist and adapt to climate change impacts.  
 17 Ontario’s sustainable forest management framework has been designed to ensure a healthy,

1 and therefore, resilient forest. At the foundation of that framework is the CFSA that directs  
2 the conservation of large, healthy, and diverse forests and their associated ecological  
3 processes and biological diversity. Building from this foundation, the forest management  
4 guides - which are required to be used by each planning team when they develop a FMP -  
5 describe in more detail the objectives (e.g., diverse range of forest types and ages) and  
6 practices (e.g., conserve soil and water resources) that are consistent with a healthy,  
7 resilient forest. This FMPM then describes the process and standards used to incorporate  
8 Ontario's sustainable forest management framework into local decision making. All of this  
9 direction provides the flexibility to adapt local forest management actions to both resist and  
10 respond to potential climate change impacts. Regular monitoring, including that specified in  
11 this FMPM, provides the necessary feedback to evaluate the effectiveness of local decisions  
12 and Ontario's overall sustainable forest management framework in achieving healthy and  
13 resilient forests.

14

15 In addition to the monitoring specified in the FMPM, the MNRF undertakes a program of  
16 effectiveness monitoring for the forest management guides to ensure that the direction in  
17 the guides is effective. The MNRF also considers climate change during the reviews of forest  
18 management guides. Declaration Order MNR-75 also requires the MNRF to: support a  
19 science program to investigate the role of forests in climate change; support the  
20 government's efforts towards climate change mitigation through the sharing of information  
21 and reporting on forest carbon balances; supporting and implementing a growth and yield  
22 program that is influenced by climate change; and reporting on how the outcomes of our  
23 science and information sharing have informed forest policy (e.g., FMPM), guides or  
24 operational practices (i.e., adaptive management).

25

26 In addition, the way Ontario's Crown forests are managed can influence the amount of  
27 carbon that is released into the atmosphere, and stored in trees and harvested wood  
28 products – i.e. mitigation. Sustainable forest management, supported by the framework  
29 described in this FMPM, can help mitigate climate change.

30

31 The MNRF continues to improve the understanding of climate change and its effect on  
32 Ontario's Crown forests working with other agencies and partners on research studies and  
33 sharing information. The sustainable forest management framework will be adapted to  
34 reflect this improved understanding over time to ensure the long-term health of Ontario's  
35 Crown forests.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1

2

3 FOREWORD ..... ii

4

5 INTRODUCTION ..... ix

6 Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual ..... xii

7

8 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

9 Table of Contents ..... A-1

10 Phase-in Provisions ..... A-6

11 1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ..... A-8

12 2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... A-79

13 3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN

14 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ..... A-105

15

16 **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

17 Table of Contents ..... B-1

18 Phase-In Provisions ..... B-6

19 1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... B-16

20 2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION ..... B-17

21 3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... B-22

22 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... B-28

23 5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY ..... B-44

24 6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..... B-45

25 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY ..... B-47

26 8.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ..... B-48

27

28 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST**

29 **MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS**

30 Table of Contents ..... C-1

31 1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... C-5

32 Phase-In Provisions ..... C-5

33 2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS ..... C-6

34 3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS ..... C-19

35 4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... C-26

36 5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS ..... C-27

37 6.0 MID-PLAN CHECKS ..... C-32

38 7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... C-37

39 8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION ..... C-50

40

1	<b>PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS</b>	
2	Table of Contents .....	D-1
3	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	D-5
4	<u>Phase-in Provisions</u> .....	D-5
5	2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS .....	D-6
6	3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE.....	D-8
7	4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS.....	D-34
8	5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .....	D-35
9	6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS.....	D-37
10	7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....	D-40
11	8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION .....	D-46
12		
13	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS</b>	
14	Table of Contents .....	E-1
15	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	E-4
16	<u>Phase-in Provisions</u> .....	E-4
17	2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....	E-6
18	3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL	
19	REPORTS .....	E-14
20	4.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....	E-20
21	5.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES .....	E-22
22		
23	<b>PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION</b>	
24	Table of Contents .....	F-1
25	<u>Phase-in Provisions</u> .....	F-4
26	WHITEFEATHER FOREST.....	F-6
27	PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS.....	F-6
28	1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....	F-6
29	3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN	
30	FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....	F-10
31	PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....	F-11
32	3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....	F-11
33	4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS .....	F-11
34	6.0 DOCUMENTATION.....	F-12
35	PART E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS.....	F-13
36	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	F-13
37	3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL	
38	REPORTS .....	F-13
39	6.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION .....	F-13
40		
41	CAT-SLATE FOREST .....	F-17
42	PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS .....	F-17
43	1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....	F-17

1	3.0	FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN	
2		FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....	F-20
3		PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....	F-21
4	4.0	PLANNED OPERATIONS .....	F-21
5	6.0	DOCUMENTATION.....	F-22
6		PART E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....	F-22
7	1.0	INTRODUCTION .....	F-22
8	6.0	REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION .....	F-22
9			
10		<b>APPENDICES</b>	
11		Table of Contents.....	App-1
12		Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents.....	App-2
13		Appendix II: Social and Economic Description.....	App-5
14		Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form .....	App-8
15		Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form .....	App-14
16		Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	App-20
17			
18		<b>GLOSSARY OF TERMS</b> .....	Glossary-1
19			

## 1 INTRODUCTION

2

3 The FMPM prescribes the requirements for Ontario's forest management planning system  
4 including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest  
5 management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning,  
6 implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning  
7 system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a  
8 subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

9

10 The FMPM provides direction based on the legislative requirements of the CFSA and the  
11 conditions of Declaration Order MNR-75.

12

13 The FMPM is intended to be implemented in a manner that is consistent with the  
14 requirements of the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* (ESA). The ESA protects species at risk  
15 and their habitats, and also allows the Minister to authorize activities that would otherwise  
16 be prohibited by the ESA, provided applicable legislated requirements are met (e.g., through  
17 permits issued under s. 17 of the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instruments, or a Section  
18 55 exemption regulation). Habitat regulations and policy developed under the ESA will  
19 contain additional direction. This direction will be available to the sustainable forest licensee  
20 through the local MNRF office.

21

22 The FMPM focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order  
23 provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies and their  
24 successors including:

25

- 26 • MNRF Horizons 2020;
- 27 • MNRF Statement of Environmental Values;
- 28 • Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- 29 • Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forests; and
- 30 • Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas.

31

32 These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context  
33 for the preparation of FMPs, including the determination of forest sustainability.

34

35 First Nation and Métis communities have unique rights and interests from other people in  
36 Ontario. These may include Aboriginal and treaty rights, recognized and affirmed in section  
37 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982* and interests as peoples with distinct cultures, histories,  
38 languages, perspectives, needs, and aspirations.

39

40 The FMPM describes the approach for working with First Nation and Métis communities to  
41 support their involvement in the forest management planning process in a manner that  
42 respects Aboriginal and treaty rights, and that assists the Crown in addressing its duty to  
43 consult obligations, where triggered.

44

1 The geographic basis for a FMP is a management unit. FMPs will be prepared for each  
2 management unit within the area of the undertaking (AOU), as depicted in Schedule 1 of  
3 Declaration Order MNR-75, in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. FMPs set out  
4 the forest management activities, including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal,  
5 and maintenance that may occur on a management unit.

6  
7 On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest licence,  
8 the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and  
9 implementation of a FMP. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is  
10 referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing FMPs. Where the  
11 requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will  
12 apply to the MNRF or the party responsible for the preparation and implementation of a  
13 FMP.

14  
15 All approvals reference the MNRF regional director, MNRF regional resources manager,  
16 MNRF district manager and/or MNRF district supervisor. In the case of the Algonquin Park  
17 Forest, the park superintendent will be considered to be the MNRF district manager, and the  
18 assistant superintendent will be considered to be the MNRF district supervisor, for the  
19 requirements of this manual.

20  
21 FMPs are prepared for a ten-year period. The planning process normally takes 36 months  
22 and results in a FMP that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary  
23 and branch road corridors, and details of operations.

24  
25 The FMPM is divided into six major parts:

26  
27 **PART A** provides direction for the preparation of FMPs, and describes requirements for:

- 28  
29
- 30 • Preparing the forest management plan and planning of operations for the ten-year  
31 period;
  - 32 • public consultation; and
  - 33 • First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.
- 34

35 **PART B** provides the FMP content requirements, and describes requirements for:

- 36  
37
- 38 • title, certification and approval pages;
  - 39 • section headings and associated documentation;
  - 40 • supplementary documentation;
  - 41 • FMP summary; and
  - 42 • FMP tables
- 43

1 **PART C** provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, plan  
2 extensions, mid-plan checks, and unscheduled and early plan renewals, and describes the  
3 requirements for:

- 4
- 5 • administrative, minor, major, long-term management direction (LTMD), and deemed
- 6 amendments;
- 7 • contingency plans and plan extensions;
- 8 • mid-plan checks;
- 9 • early plan renewals;
- 10 • public consultation; and
- 11 • First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.
- 12
- 13

14 **PART D** provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual  
15 basis, and describes requirements for:

- 16
- 17 • forest operations prescriptions;
- 18 • annual work schedules;
- 19 • prescribed burns;
- 20 • aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- 21 • insect pest management programs;
- 22 • public consultation; and
- 23 • First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.
- 24
- 25

26 **PART E** provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest  
27 management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and  
28 describes:

- 29
- 30 • requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- 31 • additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports;
- 32 • submission and review requirements; and
- 33 • management unit annual report tables.
- 34
- 35

36 **PART F** provides management unit specific direction for Far North management units that  
37 are added to the AOU (e.g., the Whitefeather Forest), and describes additional requirements  
38 for:

- 39
- 40 • First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest
- 41 management planning;
- 42 • development of the LTMD;
- 43 • planning of operations for the ten-year period;

- 1       • plan documentation; and  
2       • management unit annual reports.

3  
4

5 In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

6

- 7       I.    Analysis Package Contents  
8       II.   Social and Economic Description  
9       III.   Road Supplementary Documentation Form  
10       IV.   Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form  
11       V.    Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

12

13 The manual also contains a glossary of terms.

14

15 The FMPM is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning  
16 including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders and the  
17 public.

18

19 By January 31 of each year, the MNRF will produce a list of management units as of April 1 of  
20 that year. This list identifies FMPs currently in preparation, and all FMPs expected to be  
21 initiated in that year. This list will be available to the public upon request.

22

### 23 **Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual**

24

25 The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years  
26 before all requirements of this FMPM can be fully implemented for all management units  
27 across the province. The requirements of this FMPM will apply upon the effective date of  
28 this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning  
29 of each Part of this manual.

30



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1

2

3 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS..... 6**

4 Phase-in Provisions ..... 6

5 **1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN..... 8**

6 1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning..... 11

7 1.1.1 Introduction ..... 11

8 1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities..... 11

9 1.1.2 Planning Team..... 11

10 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference..... 12

11 1.1.2.2 Project Plan ..... 13

12 1.1.3 Local Citizens’ Committee..... 14

13 1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements..... 15

14 1.1.5 Decision Support Systems..... 16

15 1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints..... 17

16 1.1.7 Analysis Package ..... 17

17 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information ..... 18

18 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction..... 18

19 1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports..... 19

20 1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture ..... 19

21 1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports..... 20

22 1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory ..... 20

23 1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information..... 21

24 1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk..... 21

25 1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information..... 21

26 1.1.8.9 Values Information ..... 22

27 1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory..... 23

28 1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description..... 23

29 1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition ..... 24

30 1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report..... 24

31 1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis

32 Community..... 25

33 1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate..... 25

34 1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ..... 25

35 1.2.1 Introduction ..... 25

36 1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition ..... 26

37 1.2.2.1 Forest Units..... 26

38 1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information..... 26

39 1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes..... 28

40 1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications ..... 28

41 1.2.3 Management Considerations..... 28

42 1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response ..... 29

43 1.2.4 Base Model..... 29

44 1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield..... 30

1	1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession .....	30
2	1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance .....	31
3	1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	31
4	1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options .....	32
5	1.2.5 Forest Sustainability.....	33
6	1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives.....	34
7	Management Zones .....	39
8	Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting .....	40
9	Setting Desired Levels .....	41
10	Harvest Eligibility Criteria.....	41
11	1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	42
12	Objective Assessment .....	43
13	Available Harvest Area.....	44
14	Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas.....	44
15	Spatial Assessment .....	45
16	Social and Economic Assessment .....	46
17	Risk Assessment .....	46
18	1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability .....	46
19	1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors.....	47
20	1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	49
21	1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	49
22	1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....	50
23	1.3.1 Introduction .....	50
24	1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction .....	50
25	1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations .....	51
26	1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas .....	51
27	1.3.3.2 Contingency Area.....	52
28	1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas.....	52
29	1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas.....	52
30	1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan.....	53
31	1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations .....	53
32	1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations.....	53
33	1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on	
34	Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	54
35	1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern .....	54
36	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide.....	55
37	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Species at Risk.....	55
38	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises .....	56
39	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team .....	56
40	1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	57
41	Silvicultural Ground Rules.....	57
42	Conditions on Regular Operations.....	58
43	Conditions on Regular Operations for Species at Risk.....	59
44	Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts .....	59

1	1.3.6	Roads.....	60
2	1.3.6.1	Primary Road Corridors.....	60
3	1.3.6.2	Branch Road Corridors.....	61
4	1.3.6.3	Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads.....	62
5	1.3.6.4	Operational Roads .....	63
6	1.3.6.5	Existing Roads .....	64
7		Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings.....	65
8	1.3.6.6	Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	65
9		Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	66
10		Aggregate Extraction Areas .....	66
11		Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	67
12	1.3.6.7	Use Management Strategies.....	67
13	1.3.7	Expenditures .....	68
14	1.3.8	Spatial Assessment.....	68
15	1.3.9	Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management	
16		Direction.....	69
17	1.3.10	Determination of Sustainability.....	69
18	1.3.11	Summary Map.....	70
19	1.3.12	Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	71
20	1.4	Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft	
21		Forest Management Plan.....	71
22	1.4.1	Introduction .....	71
23	1.4.2	Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	71
24	1.4.3	Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	72
25	1.4.4	MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan .....	72
26	1.4.4.1	MNRF’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations .....	73
27	1.4.5	Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary .....	73
28	1.4.6	Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan .....	74
29	1.4.7	Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management	
30		Plan.....	74
31	1.5	Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management	
32		Plan .....	74
33	1.5.1	Introduction .....	74
34	1.5.2	Final List of Required Alterations.....	74
35	1.5.3	Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan	
36		Summary .....	75
37	1.5.4	Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan.....	76
38	1.5.5	Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan.....	77
39	1.5.6	Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan.....	77
40	1.6	Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan .....	78
41	<b>2.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>79</b>
42	2.1	Introduction .....	79
43	2.2	Local Citizens’ Committee.....	79
44	2.2.1	Introduction .....	79

1	2.2.2 Purpose .....	79
2	2.2.3 Membership and Organization .....	80
3	2.2.4 Terms of Reference.....	82
4	2.2.5 Administration .....	83
5	2.2.6 Reports and Records.....	83
6	2.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation .....	84
7	2.3 Public Consultation Requirements .....	84
8	2.3.1 Introduction .....	84
9	2.3.2 General Requirements .....	85
10	2.3.2.1 Public Notices.....	85
11	Additional Information Centres .....	87
12	Supplemental Notices.....	87
13	2.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens’ Committee Communication .....	87
14	2.3.2.3 Responses to Comments .....	87
15	2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act.....	88
16	2.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights.....	88
17	2.3.3 Formal Public Consultation .....	89
18	2.3.3.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate.....	89
19	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	89
20	Information and Maps Available .....	90
21	2.3.3.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	91
22	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	91
23	Information and Maps Available .....	92
24	2.3.3.3 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .....	93
25	Direct Written Notice Requirements.....	93
26	Information and Maps Available .....	94
27	2.3.3.4 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management	
28	Plan.....	95
29	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	96
30	Information and Maps Available .....	96
31	Final List of Required Alterations.....	97
32	2.3.3.5 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	97
33	Direct Written Notice Requirements.....	98
34	Information and Maps Available .....	98
35	2.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan.....	98
36	2.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment .....	98
37	2.4.1 Issue Resolution Process.....	98
38	2.4.1.1 MNRF District Manager Stage.....	100
39	2.4.1.2 MNRF Regional Director Stage .....	102
40	2.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment.....	104
41	<b>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</b>	
42	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING.....</b>	<b>105</b>
43	3.1 Introduction .....	105
44	3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities .....	105

1	3.2	Planning Team .....	106
2	3.3	Local Citizens’ Committee.....	107
3	3.4	Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management	
4		Planning .....	107
5	3.5	Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach .....	109
6	3.5.1	Forest Management Plans .....	109
7	3.5.1.1	Consultation .....	110
8		Stage One – Invitation to Participate.....	110
9		Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	110
10		Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	110
11		Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	111
12		Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan .....	111
13		Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	112
14	3.6	Documentation .....	112
15	3.6.1	First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	112
16	3.6.2	Social and Economic Description .....	113
17	3.6.3	Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values .....	113
18	3.6.4	Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement.....	115

**LIST OF FIGURES**

23	<b>Figure A-1:</b>	<b>Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan .....</b>	<b>10</b>
24	<b>Figure A-2:</b>	<b>Long-Term Management Direction.....</b>	<b>27</b>
25	<b>Figure A-3:</b>	<b>Indicators of Objective Achievement.....</b>	<b>35</b>
26	<b>Figure A-4:</b>	<b>Overview of Issue Resolution Stages .....</b>	<b>101</b>

27

1 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

2  
3 Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management  
4 plan (FMP). Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the 10-year FMP. Section  
5 2.0 describes public consultation requirements for preparing a 10-year FMP. Section 3.0  
6 describes the opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and  
7 consultation in forest management planning.

8  
9 The FMP tables referenced in Part A are included in Part B, Section 8.0.

10  
11  
12 **Phase-in Provisions**

13  
14 Forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2020 will be prepared in  
15 accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2009), except as follows:

- 16  
17 • For any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is  
18 received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM),  
19 the requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply.  
20  
21 • For forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019, the requirements  
22 of Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM will apply and the following sections of  
23 this FMPM will apply to the extent reasonably possible:  
24     ▪ Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation  
25     ▪ Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and  
26 Consultation in Forest Management Planning

27  
28 Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2020, due to a  
29 delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest  
30 management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009) and has been  
31 endorsed by the regional director prior to April 1, 2019, the forest management plan will  
32 continue to be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009), except as follows:

- 33 • The requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply to any request for issue  
34 resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the  
35 effective date of this FMPM.  
36  
37 • The requirements of the following sections of this FMPM will apply:  
38     ▪ For forest management plans originally scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019,  
39 the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM will apply and  
40 the following sections of this FMPM will apply to the extent reasonably possible:  
41         ○ Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation

- 1           ▪ Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and  
2            Consultation in Forest Management Planning

3

4   Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for  
5   renewal on April 1, 2020, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of  
6   this FMPM, except as follows:

- 7   • Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in  
8    Forest Management Planning will apply to the extent reasonable possible.

9

10

11

## 1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

A FMP will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) or by an organization authorized by MNRF. FMPs will normally be prepared every 10 years, for a 10-year period. A FMP will include the long-term management direction (LTMD) for the management unit and the planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance. There are five stages of consultation during the preparation of a FMP.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be considered in the development of the new FMP. A FMP will be prepared utilizing a review of the current plan, confirming, updating or revising the management direction as appropriate, using the best available information (e.g., science, new forest management guides, management unit annual reports).

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* (ESA), the components of the FMP that specifically address the requirements ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA along with any applicable policy requirements will be identified in the FMP (Part B, Figure B-4). If a FMP is designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, any conditions in the FMP that address the requirements ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA that are not implemented prior to the expiry of the FMP will be made conditions of the next FMP.

If a species that could be affected by the forest operations authorized by a FMP is added to, or reclassified on, the Species at Risk in Ontario (SARO) List such that it receives new protections under the ESA, the FMP will be assessed to determine whether the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied. If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied, no further planning is required (e.g., FMP amendment). If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are not satisfied, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0) and a revision to the annual work schedule (AWS) (Part D, Section 3.5) may be required.

The preparation, review and approval of the 10-year FMP takes about 36 months. The timetable for the preparation of a FMP, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1. In addition to the 36 months, time is required to assemble background information and update the planning inventory.

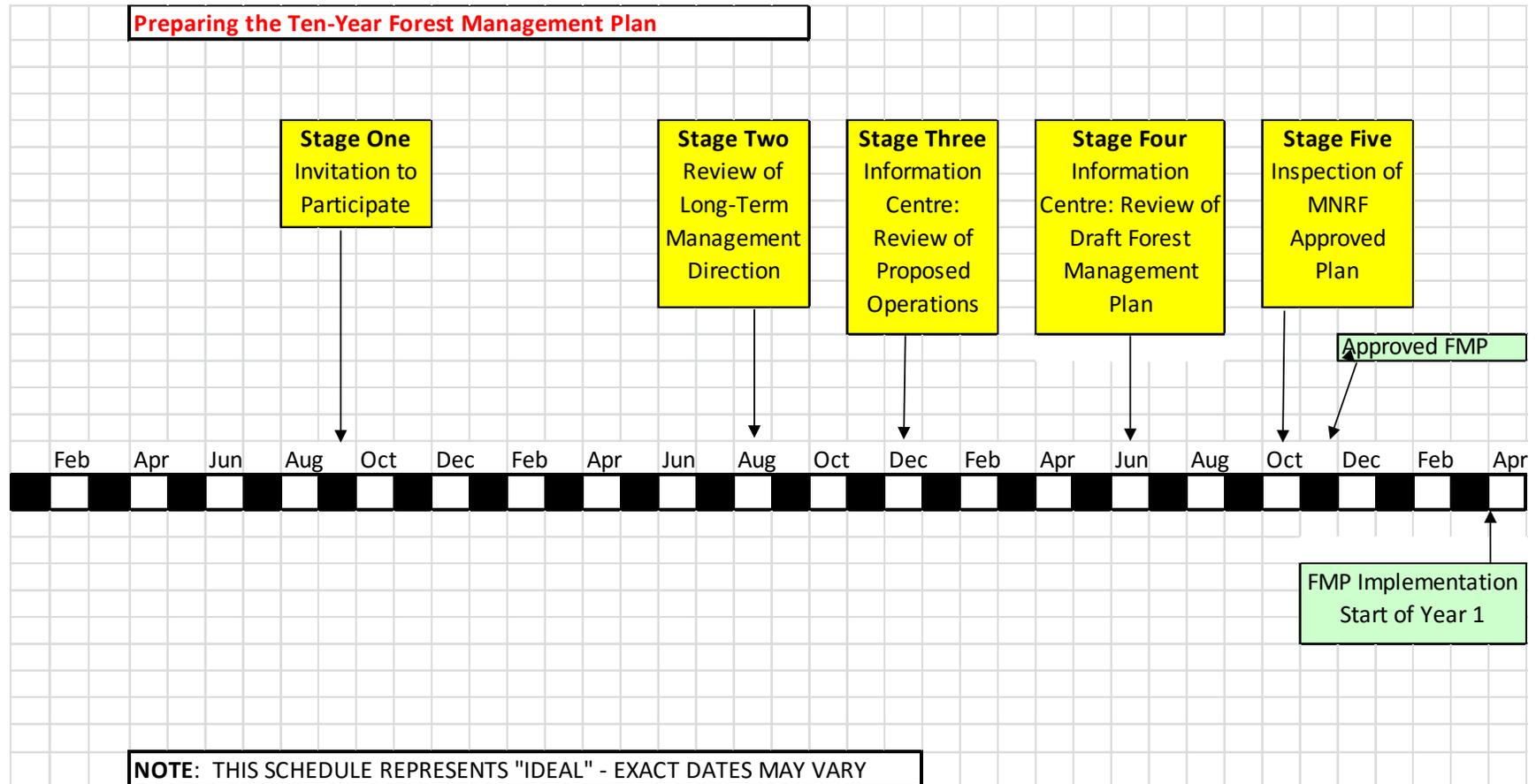
Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be available for stage one of consultation.

Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the LTMD, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage two of consultation.

- 1 Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for
- 2 access, harvest, renewal and tending for the 10-year period. This section also describes the
- 3 required documentation and products that will be available for stage three of consultation.
- 4
- 5 Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing and submitting the draft FMP, and the
- 6 requirements for MNRF's review. This section also describes the required documentation
- 7 and products that will be available for stage four of consultation.
- 8
- 9 Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval, and the products that will
- 10 be available for stage five of consultation.

1 **Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan**

2



3

## 1 **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

2

### 3 1.1.1 Introduction

4

5 This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and  
6 the assembly of background information, in preparation for stage one of public consultation  
7 (Part A, Section 2.3.3.1).

8

9 Additional requirements regarding the organization of the planning exercise and the  
10 assembly of background information for Far North management units that are added to the  
11 area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

12

13

#### 14 1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

15

16 A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be  
17 prepared. The description will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest  
18 licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

19

20

#### 21 1.1.2 Planning Team

22

23 A FMP will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary  
24 planning team and a local citizens' committee (LCC) (Part A, Section 2.2). In addition,  
25 advisors with a specialty in a particular subject area will play a role in providing advice and  
26 support during plan preparation.

27

28 The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licenced under the *Professional*  
29 *Foresters Act, 2000*. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest  
30 licensee, the organization will assign the plan author. If the FMP is prepared by MNRF, the  
31 MNRF district manager will assign the plan author.

32

33 The MNRF district manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a  
34 working body, with all members participating in plan preparation. The team will normally  
35 include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and  
36 wildlife, species at risk, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural  
37 heritage, fire management, enforcement, forest modeling and analysis, and First Nation and  
38 Métis community involvement and consultation. The level of participation of team  
39 members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Planning team members  
40 should be familiar with the management unit. The planning team will include a registered  
41 professional forester employed by MNRF.

42

43 The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for the LCC to nominate one of its  
44 members to participate on the planning team. In addition, when applicable and where

1 possible, the MNRF district manager will invite a person(s) who collectively represents  
2 overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of MNRF wood supply commitments that do not  
3 have ownership in the company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management  
4 unit to participate on the planning team.

5  
6 The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each First  
7 Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or  
8 traditional uses, including established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights, may  
9 be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP, to participate on the  
10 planning team (Part A, Section 3.2).

11  
12 The MNRF district manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the  
13 planning team ensures the FMP will be prepared in accordance with the terms of reference  
14 (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

15  
16 The MNRF regional resources manager will appoint a project manager for the preparation  
17 of the FMP. The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team,  
18 will develop and maintain a project plan for the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section  
19 1.1.2.2).

20  
21 Representatives from MNRF and other ministries may be invited to participate as advisors  
22 to the planning team and/or plan reviewers. This advisory role is available to any provincial  
23 government ministry or agency, including those agencies responsible for Indigenous affairs.  
24 The MNRF district manager will consult with other government ministries or agencies to  
25 determine whether those organizations have specific interests that should be addressed in  
26 the FMP. If the ministries or agencies have concerns, they will be invited to participate on  
27 the planning team. Representatives from the Ministry of the Environment and Climate  
28 Change (MOECC) may attend planning team meetings at their discretion.

29  
30 The MNRF regional resources manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee,  
31 will establish a steering committee for the preparation of the FMP. The steering committee  
32 will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, a representative of  
33 the MNRF regional director, and the MNRF district manager. The steering committee will  
34 monitor the preparation of the FMP and will resolve issues and disagreements among  
35 planning team members to ensure plan preparation remains in accordance with the project  
36 plan. The steering committee will seek input from First Nation and Métis community  
37 representative(s) on the planning team when resolving issues and disagreements among  
38 planning team members.

39  
40  
41 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

42  
43 The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of  
44 reference for the preparation of the FMP.

1 The terms of reference will contain:

- 2
- 3 (a) the names and affiliations of the plan author, planning team members,  
4 steering committee members, the chair, the project manager, MNRF  
5 advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries,  
6 agencies and municipalities) and MNRF plan reviewers;
  - 7 (b) a description of the decision support system that will be used, and a  
8 discussion of the manner in which they will be used (Part A, Section 1.1.5).  
9 The type of decision support system used in planning may influence the  
10 products required at specific progress checkpoints (e.g., spatial model  
11 outputs);
  - 12 (c) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members,  
13 including the involvement of the MNRF regional resources manager and/or  
14 the steering committee;
  - 15 (d) key plan preparation deliverables and identification of issues that may affect  
16 plan preparation; and
  - 17 (e) a communications plan, which outlines the costs and timing for  
18 communications efforts, including French and Indigenous translation,  
19 mailings, information centres and printing.
- 20

21 A senior official from the plan author’s organization will sign the draft terms of reference to  
22 acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization  
23 on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the district  
24 manager and regional resources manager for review at least 60 days before issuing the first  
25 public notice. The MNRF will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15  
26 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures  
27 of the planning team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and  
28 submit the final version to the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager.  
29 When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the MNRF, the MNRF district  
30 manager and the MNRF regional resources manager will sign and endorse the terms of  
31 reference, and submit it to the MNRF regional director for approval.

32

33 The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal  
34 public consultation process.

35

36

#### 37 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

38

39 The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop  
40 the project plan for the preparation of the FMP.

41

42 The project plan will contain:

- 43 (a) a schedule for plan preparation, including MNRF review and approval;
- 44

- 1 (b) a schedule for progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be  
2 responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required  
3 information (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
- 4 (c) a schedule for formal public consultation including any additional  
5 opportunities;
- 6 (d) responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with  
7 deadlines for preparation. Planning team members will acknowledge their  
8 roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the project plan. Key tasks  
9 for the preparation of the FMP will be itemized, including identification of:
- 10 (i) who will be the liaison with First Nation and Métis communities;  
11 (ii) who will be the liaison with resource-based tourist operators;  
12 (iii) who will be the contact for the LCC;  
13 (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;  
14 (v) who will be responsible for updating MNRF's mailing list, the  
15 preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;  
16 (vi) who will be required to attend information centres;  
17 (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g.,  
18 the social and economic description, maps) in the preparation of the  
19 FMP;  
20 (viii) who will participate in the development of the LTMD, and tasks they  
21 will be responsible for;  
22 (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the  
23 FMP; and  
24 (x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental*  
25 *Values* consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0);
- 26 (e) identification of a forest analysis and modeling task team, which will  
27 normally include staff from the sustainable forest licensee and MNRF, and  
28 their associated responsibilities;
- 29 (f) identification of other task teams (e.g., species at risk task team, Areas of  
30 Concern (AOC) task team, etc.), if required, and associated responsibilities;
- 31 (g) identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice for each stage  
32 of the formal public consultation process; and
- 33 (h) the roles and responsibilities of MNRF plan reviewers, including designation  
34 of a coordinator for the lists of required alterations.

35  
36 Throughout plan preparation, the project plan will be updated to reflect changes to the  
37 preparation schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities.  
38

39

### 40 1.1.3 Local Citizens' Committee

41

42 A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the  
43 preparation of the FMP. Normally, the committee will already be in place. The committee  
44 may be established for one FMP, or it may be an MNRF district committee established to

1 assist in the preparation of FMPs for all management units in the district. The MNRF district  
2 manager may establish multiple LCCs or sub-committees for a management unit. The role of  
3 the LCC in the preparation and implementation of the FMP is described in detail in Part A,  
4 Section 2.2.

5  
6 Prior to commencing the preparation of a new FMP, the MNRF district manager will review  
7 the membership of the LCC and fill any vacancies. The review of the membership will ensure  
8 that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will  
9 be appointed by the MNRF district manager. Part A, Section 3.3 describes the process for  
10 reviewing the First Nation and Métis community representation on the LCC.

11  
12 The committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team  
13 (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The LCC, with assistance from MNRF, will prepare the terms of  
14 reference for the committee (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

#### 15 16 17 1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements

18  
19 The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement  
20 between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development  
21 of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.

22  
23 To initiate the development of a resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest  
24 licensee will write a letter to each resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the  
25 management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the preparation and  
26 implementation of the new FMP or previous FMPs. An updated list of resource-based  
27 tourism operators, both those with facilities on the management unit and those without  
28 facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the  
29 sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture, and Sport.

30  
31 The MNRF's forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism  
32 values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions  
33 related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The  
34 prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by  
35 the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the preparation of the FMP.

36  
37 The MNRF will ensure that the parties are aware of the opportunities for the public and  
38 First Nation and Métis communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a  
39 resource stewardship agreement related to forest management activities.

40  
41  
42

1 1.1.5 Decision Support Systems  
2

3 Decision support systems used in forest management planning are information systems that  
4 utilize strategic models, analysis tools, and databases in an interactive, analytical process, to  
5 support decision making. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision  
6 support systems to facilitate the strategic analysis in the development of the LTMD and the  
7 planning of operations.

8  
9 Components (e.g., models or analysis tools) of the decision support system to be used for  
10 any of the following tasks will be approved by the director of MNR's Crown Forests and  
11 Lands Policy Branch prior to inclusion in the terms of reference:

- 12
- 13 (a) projection of forest conditions through time;
  - 14 (b) determination of the required types and levels of access, harvest, renewal,  
15 and tending activities;
  - 16 (c) determination of the available harvest area; and
  - 17 (d) assessment of sustainability.
- 18

19 The decision support system used in the development of the LTMD will be able to produce  
20 the required products and analysis, and:

- 21
- 22 (a) be capable of tracking the entire forested and non-forested landbase of a  
23 management unit through time;
  - 24 (b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or other (FMP-1), for their  
25 contribution to forest diversity and wildlife habitat;
  - 26 (c) evaluate all managed forested areas (FMP-1) for their contribution to timber  
27 production;
  - 28 (d) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of  
29 160 years;
  - 30 (e) account for natural disturbance agents, such as forest fire, windthrow, and  
31 insects;
  - 32 (f) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;
  - 33 (g) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural  
34 systems (if applicable to the management unit);
  - 35 (h) be capable of representing alternative LTMDs; and
  - 36 (i) be capable of representing the movement of wood from management zones  
37 to destination(s).
- 38

39 The choice of decision support system used in planning may influence the requirements of  
40 specific progress checkpoints. The planning team may identify additional progress  
41 checkpoints to accommodate specific decision support system needs.

42  
43

1 1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints

2  
3 Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development and preliminary endorsement of the  
4 LTMD of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team members and advisors,  
5 as identified in the project plan, must confirm the satisfactory completion of the required  
6 information for each progress checkpoint and document their support, prior to receiving  
7 the confirmation of the satisfactory completion of the next check point. The MNRF regional  
8 resources manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of  
9 the required information.

10  
11 The progress checkpoints are:

- 12  
13 (a) Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);  
14 (b) Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);  
15 (c) Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);  
16 (d) Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);  
17 (e) Support for the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction, Determination  
18 of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors(Part A, Section 1.2.7); and  
19 (f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A,  
20 Section 1.3.2).

21  
22 The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a)  
23 through (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.7). The MNRF  
24 regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will confirm the satisfactory  
25 completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

26  
27 The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms  
28 of reference.

29  
30 During the development of the LTMD, previous steps and progress checkpoints in the  
31 planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or corrected information  
32 is available, which will significantly alter the LTMD.

33  
34  
35 1.1.7 Analysis Package

36  
37 The analysis package summarizes the collaborative analysis conducted by the forest analysis  
38 and modeling task team in the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2). The analysis  
39 package also documents task team support of progress checkpoints (a) through (e) (Part A,  
40 Section 1.1.6).

41  
42 The analysis package will be updated throughout the development of the LTMD. Appendix I  
43 outlines the required contents of the analysis package.

## 1 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

2

3 The project manager will coordinate the review and confirmation, update, or revision of the  
4 background information in the current FMP for use in the preparation of the new FMP. The  
5 background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on  
6 the relevancy for the management unit.

7

8 The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation  
9 includes:

10

- 11 (a) sources of direction;
- 12 (b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNRF;
- 13 (c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that  
14 are scheduled for implementation;
- 15 (d) the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation of  
16 the previous FMP, management unit annual reports for the current FMP, and  
17 previous reports of past forest operations;
- 18 (e) forest resources inventory;
- 19 (f) fish and wildlife inventory information;
- 20 (g) inventories and information for species at risk;
- 21 (h) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural  
22 heritage resource values, and mineral resource assessment maps;
- 23 (i) updated values maps and a resource-based tourism values map;
- 24 (j) roads and road water crossing inventory;
- 25 (k) a social and economic description;
- 26 (l) MNRF information describing current industrial wood requirements;
- 27 (m) information on the historic forest condition; and
- 28 (n) the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (Part A,  
29 Section 3.6.1).

30

31

## 32 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

33

34 *The Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994 (CFSA)* and MNRF's Environmental Assessment  
35 Act Requirements for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (Declaration Order  
36 MNR-75) provide legal direction for the management of Ontario's Crown forests.

37

38 The MNRF will ensure that documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-  
39 making are available to the planning team and the LCC at the outset of planning. Those  
40 sources of direction include:

41

- 42 (a) MNRF's provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource  
43 management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the  
44 Statement of Environmental Values for the MNRF, MNRF's current corporate

- 1 long-term strategic policy (e.g., Horizons 2020), Policy Framework for  
2 Sustainable Forests, and MNRF resource management policies (e.g., Ontario  
3 Provincial Parks: Management Statements, Ontario’s and MNRF’s action plan  
4 and strategies on climate change, Provincial Wood Supply Strategy, and Old  
5 Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown Forests or their successors);
- 6 (b) Crown land use direction contained in Ontario’s Crown Land Use Policy Atlas,  
7 or its successor;
- 8 (c) the existing approved FMP for the management unit, with particular  
9 emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;
- 10 (d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries  
11 management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation  
12 interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
- 13 (e) any applicable statement that has been published under subsection 11(8) of  
14 the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any  
15 relevant ESA policy direction;
- 16 (f) independent forest audits, action plans and related status reports for the  
17 management unit;
- 18 (g) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy  
19 documents developed for each MNRF administrative region;
- 20 (h) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses  
21 dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;
- 22 (i) the results of the negotiations between MNRF and First Nation and Métis  
23 communities; and
- 24 (j) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding  
25 resource use on the management unit).
- 26  
27

#### 28 1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

29  
30 Audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management generally in  
31 the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management, State of the Forest Report)  
32 are available on the Ontario Government website.

33  
34

#### 35 1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture

36  
37 The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual sets out a list of guidance and direction (e.g.,  
38 forest management guides) to be referenced in the development of forest management  
39 strategies and prescriptions, and implementation of forest management activities.

40

41 The MNRF will prepare a list of guides that are applicable to the management unit. The list  
42 will contain the titles, the specific editions of the guides, and the internet site where the  
43 guides can be accessed.

44

1 1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

2  
3 The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available  
4 for use in the preparation of the FMP. The year five management unit annual report for the  
5 current FMP and the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation  
6 for the previous FMP, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years, will also  
7 be available. In particular, the conclusions and recommendations in the year five  
8 management unit annual report (e.g., the review of renewal and tending activities, spatial  
9 distribution of harvest areas) will provide information for confirming or changing the LTMD.

10

11

12 1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory

13

14 The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest  
15 management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and forest diversity  
16 analyses. The planning inventory contains updated forest resources inventory information  
17 as a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning inventory  
18 also contains expected changes, based on anticipated harvest for the remainder of the  
19 current FMP. The detailed technical requirements, responsibility and timing for preparation  
20 and submission of the planning inventory are described in the Forest Information Manual  
21 (FIM). Development of the planning inventory will be documented in the analysis package  
22 (Appendix I).

23

24 The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making  
25 in the FMP. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is categorized as  
26 areas managed for timber production and other areas. Other areas include national and  
27 provincial parks and conservation reserves, and areas that have been designated through  
28 legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The  
29 areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown forest lands.

30

31 The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement  
32 of non-timber objectives in the FMP. For the planning team to consider provincial parks and  
33 conservation reserves on the management unit in the achievement of management  
34 objectives, forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

35

36 **CHECKPOINT: PLANNING INVENTORY**

37 This progress checkpoint will include information and products associated with the planning  
38 inventory.

39

40

41

1 1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information

2  
3 Fish and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in  
4 planning. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9) is the source of site-specific  
5 information for the fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.

6  
7 Fish and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

- 8 (a) known fish and wildlife species on the management unit;  
9 (b) fish and wildlife species of local concern; and  
10 (c) the slope of shoreland areas.

11  
12 Sources for fish inventory information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat  
13 surveys. Sources for wildlife inventory information include population, range and habitat  
14 surveys.

15  
16  
17 1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

18  
19 Inventories and information for species at risk on the management unit will be available for  
20 use in planning. The MNR's Natural Heritage Information Centre is the primary source of  
21 information for species at risk. The values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), is the source of site-  
22 specific information for the flora, fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.  
23 This information will contribute to the development of management objectives and the  
24 preparation of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

25  
26 The species inventories and information which will be available include known sites of  
27 occurrence of flora, fish and wildlife species, and known sites of occurrence of their habitat.

28  
29 Publication of information on some values may be detrimental to their conservation, in  
30 which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

31  
32  
33 1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information

34  
35 Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for  
36 use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values information, and  
37 the development of management objectives for the forest.

38  
39 The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

- 40  
41 (a) information on each park and protected area, including the name,  
42 designation (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g.,  
43 wilderness, recreation) and area (hectares);  
44 (b) cultural heritage resource values inventory information, including:

- 1 (i) known archaeological sites and cultural heritage landscapes;  
2 (ii) First Nation and Métis values information; and  
3 (iii) areas of archaeological potential; and  
4 (c) mineral resource assessment maps.  
5

6 Mineral resource assessment maps are available from the Ministry of Northern  
7 Development, and Mines.  
8  
9

#### 10 1.1.8.9 Values Information 11

12 The MNRF will produce a values map, or series of maps, for the management unit, in  
13 accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The values maps provide a summary of the  
14 geographic locations of known values for the management unit, including provincial parks  
15 and conservation reserves on the management unit, which will be considered in forest  
16 management planning, and about which further inventory information is available. The  
17 values maps are intended to be used primarily as background information for planning, and  
18 will also be used for display purposes and to solicit additional information about values. The  
19 types of values information normally portrayed on the values maps are listed in the FIM. No  
20 listing of values can be definitive. For the purposes of forest management planning, it can  
21 be any feature, entity or forest condition that could be impacted by forest operations. Base  
22 features can be considered values; lakes are an example. The list of values considered in  
23 forest management planning varies by management unit, landscape features, and  
24 stakeholders involved. The list provided in the FIM technical specifications is not all  
25 inclusive; it is a guide to the types of values considered.  
26

27 Values information will be updated as information is assembled during the preparation and  
28 implementation of the FMP. The MNRF will update and provide the most current and  
29 relevant information available on values, including cultural heritage resource values, at each  
30 stage of public consultation. Information on values will generally be available to the public.  
31 When publication of the location of particular values may be detrimental to their  
32 conservation, they will not be portrayed on the values maps.  
33

34 The values maps will be accompanied by text that includes:  
35

- 36 (a) a list of references to the sources of information on the values maps or  
37 otherwise available in the database;  
38 (b) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and  
39 (c) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being  
40 incomplete or missing.  
41

42 With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white  
43 pine forest communities, as defined in the Old Growth Forest Definitions for Ontario  
44 (technical report), will be identified on the values maps for the management unit.

1 A separate values map for resource-based tourism values will be produced by MNRF to  
2 support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4) and  
3 development of operational prescriptions and conditions to protect tourism values.

4  
5 The most up-to-date versions of the values maps will be maintained at the appropriate  
6 MNRF office and will be available for public viewing.

#### 9 1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory

10  
11 The planning team will confirm and update the existing roads and water crossings inventory  
12 for the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. For the purpose  
13 of a roads and water crossings inventory, existing roads and water crossings are those that  
14 fall within the *Public Lands Act, 1990 (PLA)*, Section 48 definition of a road and are  
15 reasonably capable of providing access for licenced highway vehicles. For each road or road  
16 network, the planning team will confirm the:

- 17  
18 (a) road or road network identifier;  
19 (b) road class;  
20 (c) geographic location;  
21 (d) responsibility assignment for the road and water crossings; and  
22 (e) use management strategy.

23  
24 Existing roads, approved primary road corridors and access restrictions on roads will be  
25 portrayed. Roads and water crossings that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
26 licensee will be differentiated in the inventory.

#### 29 1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description

30  
31 A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using  
32 available information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix II. The social and  
33 economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

- 34  
35 (a) communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g.,  
36 employment, municipal taxes) related to the forest industry or forest  
37 management activities;  
38 (b) forest resource-processing facilities; and  
39 (c) the other industrial and non-industrial users of the forest.

40  
41 The description will be considered in the development of the LTMD and the planning of  
42 forest operations.

1 Municipal economic development officers and northern development officers from the  
2 Ministry of Northern Development and Mines may provide, verify or update information  
3 for the social and economic description. Forest users and planning team advisors may also  
4 provide some of the information.

5  
6

#### 7 1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition

8

9 The description of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the LTMD  
10 for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition will provide insight into the  
11 natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current  
12 forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in  
13 understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources  
14 from the management unit.

15

16 The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise the summary of the historic  
17 forest condition. A revised summary of the history of the forest will be prepared if required.  
18 The summary will include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human  
19 activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and  
20 the associated management implications.

21

22 A summary of the history of the forest on the management unit will address:

23

- 24 (a) historical use of forest resources;
- 25 (b) historical development of access;
- 26 (c) historical spatial distribution of forest harvest;
- 27 (d) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
- 28 (e) changes to the forest, including:
  - 29 (i) forest type, structure and composition;
  - 30 (ii) forest landscape pattern;
  - 31 (iii) forest productivity;
  - 32 (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
  - 33 (v) wildlife habitat; and
  - 34 (vi) forest biodiversity.

35

36

#### 37 1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

38

39 Part A, Section 3.6.1 describes the requirements for the preparation of the First Nation and  
40 Métis Background Information Report(s).

41

42

1 1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis  
2 Community

3

4 Part A, Section 3.0 describes the requirements to involve First Nation and Métis  
5 communities in forest management planning.

6

7

8 1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

9

10 After the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.1.1 to 1.1.9 have been completed, the planning  
11 team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A,  
12 Section 2.3.3.1, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in  
13 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

14

15

16 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

17

18 1.2.1 Introduction

19

20 This section describes the requirements for the development of the LTMD for the  
21 management unit, in preparation for stage two of public consultation (Part A, Section  
22 2.3.3.2). Figure A-2 provides an overview of the process involved in the development of the  
23 LTMD.

24

25 The LTMD will be consistent with legislation and policy; consider direction in forest  
26 management guides; balance social, economic and environmental considerations; and  
27 provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

28

29 The planning team will review the LTMD in the current FMP, and confirm, update, or revise  
30 forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives. This  
31 approach will facilitate stability and consistency in management direction in successive  
32 FMPs.

33

34 In the development of the LTMD, the current forest condition is described to provide  
35 context for the identification of desired forest and benefits, and the establishment of  
36 management objectives and indicators. Through strategic analysis, the LTMD will identify  
37 the levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities that will balance the  
38 achievement of management objectives. A preliminary determination of sustainability will  
39 examine whether the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the  
40 management unit.

41

42 Additional requirements regarding the development of the LTMD for Far North  
43 management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.

44

1 1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition

2  
3 The planning inventory products are combined and updated with forest classification  
4 information to produce the base model inventory, in accordance with the requirements of  
5 the FIM. The base model inventory and landscape level information are used to describe the  
6 current forest condition.

7  
8 The base model inventory and current forest condition provide context for the identification  
9 of desired forest and benefits and management objectives.

10  
11 The development of the forest classifications will be documented in the analysis package  
12 (Appendix I)

13  
14 A management unit land summary will be documented in FMP-1.

15  
16  
17 1.2.2.1 Forest Units

18  
19 The forest unit provides the primary classification for assumptions regarding how the forest  
20 develops, through time and in response to treatment. Forest units are applied to the entire  
21 Crown forest on the management unit. The forest units will align with the regional standard  
22 forest unit classifications and provide the ability to assess the requirements of the forest  
23 management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale.

24  
25 Forest units may be divided, where appropriate, into analysis units for modelling purposes.  
26 Analysis units refine forest units to more accurately project forest development. The degree  
27 to which forest units and analysis units are represented in the models depends on the  
28 strategic models used in the decision support system (i.e., spatial versus non-spatial).

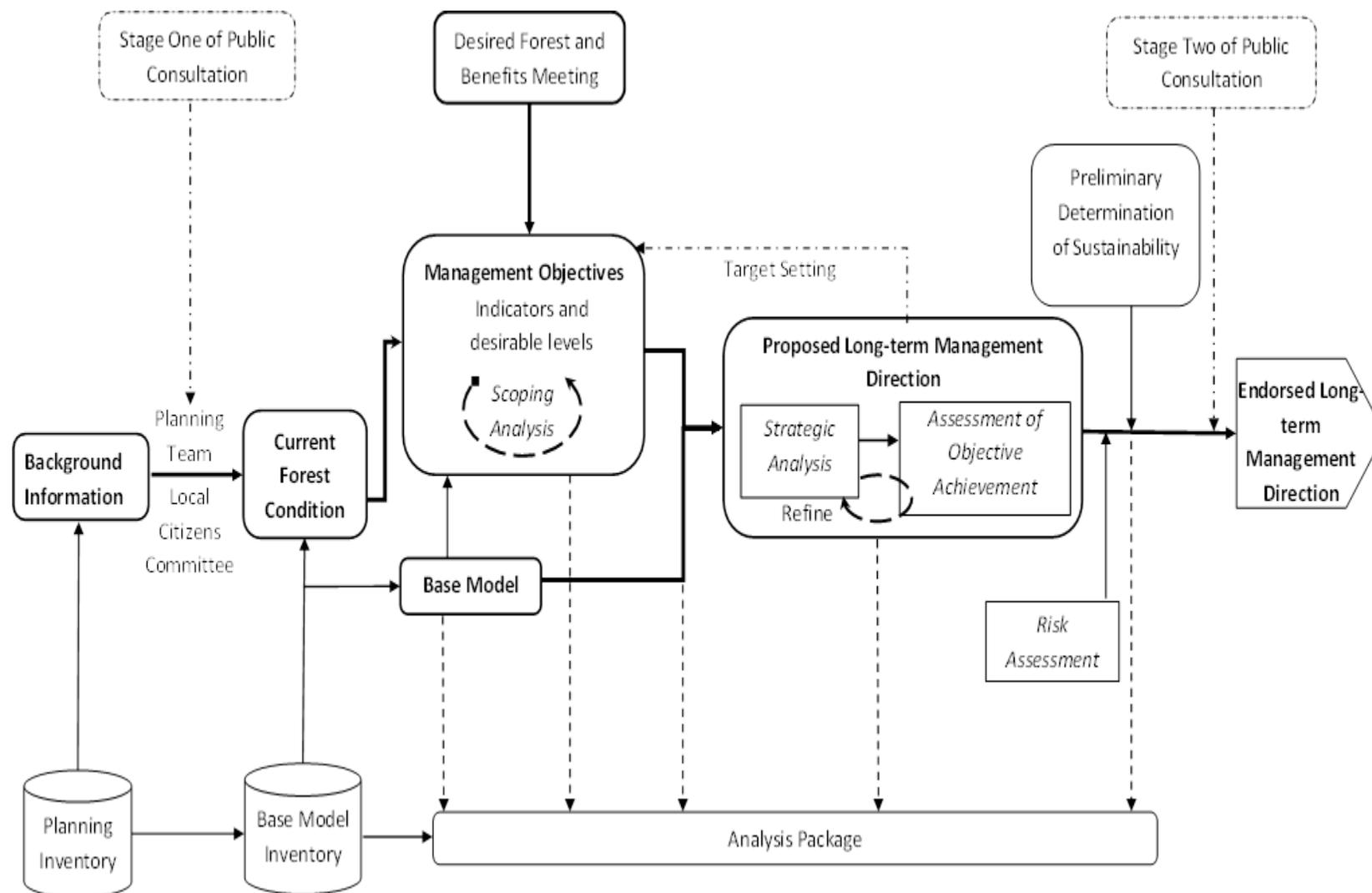
29  
30 Forest units are described in FMP-2. Forest units and analysis units will be provided in the  
31 base model inventory. The summary of managed Crown productive forest by forest unit is  
32 summarized in FMP-3.

33  
34  
35 1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information

36  
37 Forest stands will be classified based on management decision information, such as  
38 silvicultural intensity, stage of management, and age. Silvicultural intensity means the  
39 projected yield and not the treatments to be implemented. Management decision  
40 information is provided in the base model inventory.

1 **Figure A-2: Long-Term Management Direction**

2



3

1 1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes

2  
3 Forest landscape classes are used to describe the current forest composition, structure and  
4 pattern at the landscape level. Landscape classes that are used to describe the current forest  
5 condition are defined in MNR's approved forest management guide(s) relating to landscape  
6 pattern and structure.

7  
8 The forest landscape classes will be described (e.g., maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in  
9 the development of management objectives.

10

11

12 1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

13

14 There may be other forest classifications to describe the current forest condition based on  
15 forest cover (e.g., habitat for wildlife species, habitat for forest-related species at risk). The  
16 requirement for other forest classifications will be determined by the planning team. The  
17 forest classifications will be described (e.g., maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in the  
18 development of management objectives.

19

20

21 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE FOREST CLASSIFICATION AND CURRENT FOREST**  
22 **CONDITION**

23 This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated  
24 with the forest classification in the base model inventory and the current forest condition  
25 (Part A Section 1.2.2).

26

27

28 1.2.3 Management Considerations

29

30 Management considerations are changes to the forest condition (e.g., large natural  
31 disturbance) or social, economic or environmental concerns that will be considered in the  
32 development of the LTMD. Management considerations will also be considered in the  
33 planning and implementation of operations.

34

35 Management considerations that may influence the development of the LTMD include:

36

- 37 (a) major changes in landbase;
- 38 (b) recent, large natural disturbances;
- 39 (c) access to remote tourism areas;
- 40 (d) species at risk;
- 41 (e) First Nation and Métis community interests;
- 42 (f) modified fire response;
- 43 (g) shifts in markets or utilization;
- 44 (h) other planning initiatives;

- 1 (i) funding for silviculture; and
- 2 (j) climate change.

3  
4 Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current  
5 FMP. Other sources of information about management considerations include new science,  
6 new policy direction (e.g., ESA policy direction), independent forest audits and the  
7 associated action plans for the management unit, the First Nation and Métis Background  
8 Information Report(s), and submissions from the LCC and the general public.

#### 9 10 11 1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response

12  
13 The majority of Ontario’s forests are fire-dependent ecosystems that rely on periodic  
14 wildland fire as a renewal agent in the absence of forest management. Wildland fire can be  
15 used as a tool, where safe and appropriate, to support land and resource management  
16 objectives (e.g., hazard reduction, forest renewal, habitat management). The planning team,  
17 through dialogue with their local MNRF fire management representative, will determine if  
18 any candidate areas (landscape or site-specific) for modified fire response exist on the  
19 management unit. Modified fire response areas, if any, will be portrayed.

#### 20 21 22 1.2.4 Base Model

23  
24 The base model serves as the common starting point for the development of the LTMD. The  
25 base model will include assumptions related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use  
26 decisions), forest dynamics (e.g., forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural  
27 options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. The  
28 planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise model assumptions from the  
29 current FMP. An analysis of past silviculture performance will provide the default silvicultural  
30 assumptions for the base model. The existing model assumptions will be reviewed in  
31 consideration of the best available science and information, new legislation, regulation and  
32 policy, and changes to forest condition and landbase.

33  
34 Sensitivity analysis will be undertaken to provide insight on how key model assumptions  
35 influence how the forest develops naturally, and in response to forest management.  
36 Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model  
37 outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. The results of the sensitivity analysis  
38 supports the assumptions used in the base model.

39  
40 The development of the base model will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix  
41 I).

## 1 1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

2

3 The combination of forest unit and silvicultural intensity (i.e., yield) will create a category of  
4 forest type called a silvicultural stratum. Yield curves or growth projections will be developed  
5 for each forest unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield  
6 information from the provincially coordinated growth and yield program, applicable to the  
7 management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

8

9 The yield curves or growth projections will:

10

- 11 (a) be consistent with growth and yield models developed through Ontario's
- 12 growth and yield program;
- 13 (b) be developed using relevant data, collected to approved data collection
- 14 standards and accepted modelling principles;
- 15 (c) be developed consistent with results of performance surveys;
- 16 (d) be validated with independent local data, when available;
- 17 (e) be developed to represent silvicultural strata;
- 18 (f) be developed by species to provide separate estimates for yield by broad size
- 19 or product group;
- 20 (g) be developed to represent current utilization standards, and will provide
- 21 separate estimates for yield in addition to current utilization standards (e.g.,
- 22 undersized and defect);
- 23 (h) be consistent with natural forest succession inputs and other assumptions
- 24 (e.g., harvest eligibility); and
- 25 (i) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools
- 26 used in planning and the development of regeneration standards.

27

28 Growth models or yield models not consistent with those developed through Ontario's  
29 growth and yield program will require a sensitivity analysis and be subject to review and  
30 approval prior to use in the base model. The review of growth models or yield models for  
31 statistical and sampling considerations will be coordinated by the MNRF growth and yield  
32 program.

33

34

## 35 1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession

36

37 Natural forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time  
38 as a result of aging, break-up, recruitment, and non-stand replacing natural disturbances.  
39 Natural forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types  
40 to forest. Natural forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from  
41 one forest unit to another (e.g., succession rule), and/or a change in species composition  
42 over time (e.g., yield curve).

43

1 To predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each  
2 silvicultural stratum applicable to the forest.

3  
4  
5 1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

6  
7 Forest disturbance information for the managed forest includes stand replacing natural  
8 disturbances under fire suppression and post-disturbance succession. The MNR's forest  
9 management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale  
10 reflect expected rates of stand replacing natural disturbances (e.g., fire and insects).  
11 Landscape composition direction from MNR's forest management guide(s) that addresses  
12 the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale will be accounted for in the decision  
13 support system. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur  
14 through inventory updates (e.g., windthrow).

15  
16  
17 1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules

18  
19 A silvicultural ground rule (SGR) identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system,  
20 future forest condition at maturity (e.g., silvicultural stratum), development information,  
21 management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest,  
22 renewal and tending treatments. SGRs identify regeneration standards for the assessment of  
23 establishment (at a time when composition can be determined) and performance (at a time  
24 when growth can be measured). Establishment is the period between harvest and the  
25 completion of silvicultural treatments. Performance is the period between establishment  
26 and when projected yield can be assessed. SGRs will be developed for applicable forest unit  
27 – ecosite combinations on the management unit and will form the basis of the silvicultural  
28 options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The recommendations from the analysis  
29 of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be incorporated in the development of  
30 SGRs. SGRs will be developed using the approved silvicultural guide(s).

31  
32 The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the  
33 direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNR as applicable  
34 to the management unit. Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and  
35 confirmed, updated or revised in the development of SGRs. Local knowledge and the  
36 experience gained by the planning team from past management practices will also be  
37 considered (e.g., results of silvicultural monitoring).

38  
39 For each SGR, the most common silvicultural treatment package used on the management  
40 unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments for each of  
41 the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a SGR includes a treatment not recommended  
42 in the applicable silvicultural guide(s), the treatment will be recorded as an exception. The  
43 rationale for that exception will be provided, and the monitoring program in the FMP will

1 describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment  
2 (Part B, Section 4.7.2). The SGRs will be documented in FMP-4.

#### 3 4 5 1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options

6  
7 Silvicultural options will represent the broad options appropriate for the forest as described  
8 in the SGR(s) (FMP-4). Modelled silvicultural options exhibit the following characteristics:

- 9  
10 (a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest units and  
11 ecosites); and  
12 (b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., silvicultural stratum,  
13 regeneration standard).  
14

15 Each silvicultural option will identify the silvicultural stratum to which it applies and will have  
16 assumptions about the future forest condition, treatment costs, and success rates in  
17 response to treatments (e.g., post-harvest renewal transition rule). The silvicultural options  
18 of the base model will reflect the most commonly used SGR(s).  
19

20 A registered professional forester will have undertaken and documented an analysis of  
21 silvicultural activities in the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.3).  
22 The analysis will provide input to assist in determining the necessary levels of renewal and  
23 tending operations, and associated expenditures required. The management unit annual  
24 report also provides recommendations that will be used in the development of silvicultural  
25 assumptions.  
26

27 The analysis of past silvicultural performance will serve as the default post-harvest renewal  
28 transition rules. The analysis of past silvicultural performance will consider:

- 29  
30 (a) results of past silvicultural treatments;  
31 (b) results of SGRs;  
32 (c) assessments of regeneration results; and  
33 (d) the relationship between new forest classifications and growth and yield  
34 assumptions and historic records.  
35

36 Any adjustments from the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be supported by  
37 rationale. The rationale for adjustments to the default inputs will be consistent with one of  
38 the following methods:

- 39  
40 (a) analysis of additional empirical data/information (e.g., ecosite) using  
41 correlative techniques; or  
42 (b) analysis incorporating expert opinion with empirical data/information using a  
43 causal framework (e.g., Bayesian belief network).  
44

1 Where expert opinion is applied, the basis for an adjustment (e.g., ecosite limitations) will  
2 require monitoring and reporting, which may be satisfied by an existing monitoring program.  
3 The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in FMP-5.

4  
5 Silvicultural options will also specify the limits to which the option can be applied on the  
6 management unit (e.g., only ten percent of jack pine sites are suitable for seeding).

7  
8 Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed  
9 silvicultural options:

- 10  
11 (a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silvicultural guide(s);  
12 (b) where the outcome is uncertain; or  
13 (c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain.

14  
15  
16 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL INVENTORY AND BASE MODEL**

17 This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated  
18 with the base model and base model inventory (Part A, Section 1.2.4).

19  
20  
21 **1.2.5 Forest Sustainability**

22  
23 The CFSA (section 2 (2)) requires sustainability of Crown forest to be determined in  
24 accordance with the FMPM. Sustainability is defined in the CFSA as “long term Crown forest  
25 health [which is] the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s  
26 complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario”.

27  
28 The CFSA presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability in Ontario:

- 29  
30 (a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated  
31 ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.  
32 (b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by  
33 using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements,  
34 emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing  
35 adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and  
36 economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

37  
38 The FMP must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.  
39 Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit will be  
40 made during the preparation of the FMP and following the implementation of forest  
41 operations.

42  
43 The preliminary determination of sustainability during the preparation of the FMP is  
44 conducted during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3) and updated, if

1 necessary, after operations are planned for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The  
2 determination is based on the assessment of objective achievement.

3  
4 In the preparation of a FMP, the determination of sustainability involves:

- 5  
6 (a) development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) that address:  
7 (i) CFSA objective categories and required indicators (Figure A-3); and  
8 (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by the public, planning  
9 team and LCC;  
10 (b) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Section  
11 1.2.5.2);  
12 (c) development of a proposed LTMD that balances the achievement of the  
13 management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);  
14 (d) concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on  
15 the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.5.3 and 1.3.10).  
16

17 The conclusion is a determination that the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest  
18 health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and  
19 social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (e.g., through  
20 the application of forest management guides to protect values).  
21  
22

### 23 1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives

24  
25 The CFSA requires management objectives in a FMP to be compatible with the sustainability  
26 of the Crown forest (section 68 (3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement to be  
27 identified (section 68 (3)(d)). Also, the CFSA (section 68 (5)(b)) requires each FMP to contain  
28 management objectives relating to:  
29

- 30 (a) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation  
31 of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for  
32 animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems;  
33 (b) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that  
34 healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities;  
35 (c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are  
36 dependent on the Crown forest; and  
37 (d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown  
38 forest.  
39

40 If applicable, management objectives will be developed for forest-related species at risk on  
41 the management unit. Management objectives will consider the ESA and any relevant ESA  
42 policy direction.

43 Figure A-3 identifies objective categories from the CFSA, indicators and timing of  
44 assessment.

1

2 **Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement**

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
Social and Economic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long-term harvest levels</li> </ul>	Long-term projected available harvest area  Long-term projected available harvest volume by species group  Long-term projected available harvest volume by broad size or product group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-8, FMP-9, FMP-10)</li> </ul>
Social and Economic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Involvement in forest management planning</li> </ul>	Opportunities for involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan development  LCC's self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Draft Plan (FMP-10)</li> </ul>

3

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
<p>Forest Diversity</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Natural Landscape Patterns</li> <li>• Forest Structure and Composition</li> <li>• Distribution and abundance of forest ecosystems</li> </ul>	<p>Landscape pattern</p> <p>Area by forest unit and development stage</p> <p>Amount and distribution of old growth forest</p> <p>(refer to forest management guides for indicators)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-10)</li> <li>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-10)</li> <li>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</li> </ul>
<p>Forest Diversity and Provision of forest cover</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Habitat for animal life</li> </ul>	<p>Habitat for forest-related species</p> <p>Habitat for forest-related species at risk</p> <p>(refer to forest management guides and ESA policy for indicators)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-10)</li> <li>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-10)</li> <li>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</li> </ul>

1  
2

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
Social and Economic Planned harvest levels Community well-being	Actual harvest area, by forest unit. (% of planned harvest area)  Actual harvest volume, by species group. (% of planned harvest volume)	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)
Social and Economic Community well-being	Kilometres of SFL roads per square kilometre of Crown forest.	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)

1

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
Silviculture	<p>Percent of harvested forest area assessed as successfully established by forest unit</p> <p>Planned and actual percent of harvest area treated by silvicultural strata</p> <p>Planned and actual percent of area successfully regenerated to the target forest unit by forest unit</p>	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)
<p>Ecological Sustainability</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Healthy forest ecosystems</li> </ul>	<p>Percent of forest operation inspections in non-compliance, by activity and remedy type</p> <p>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</p> <p>Compliance with management practices that protect water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</p>	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)
<p>Social and Economic</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Harvest levels, community well-being</li> </ul>	Managed Crown forest available for timber production	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)

1  
2  
3  
4

1 The LTMD and the determination of sustainability require the development of management  
2 objectives and associated indicators, desirable levels and targets. Summary information  
3 associated with the development of management objectives will be documented in the  
4 analysis package (Appendix I).

5  
6 A management objective is a statement of a quantitative or qualitative desired future forest  
7 benefit or condition developed specifically for the management unit to be achieved through  
8 forest management planning and/or the manipulation of forest cover. A management  
9 objective may have an implementation time frame greater than the 10-year period of the  
10 FMP.

11  
12 Each management objective will have an indicator(s). An indicator is a systematically  
13 measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed  
14 periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are used to assess the effectiveness of forest  
15 management planning and/or activities in achieving management objectives, and the  
16 sustainability of the forest.

17  
18 The indicators will be assessed at various times during the preparation and implementation  
19 of the FMP. Figure A-3 identifies which indicators that will be assessed during plan  
20 preparation; during plan implementation; or the indicators may be assessed during  
21 preparation and during implementation.

22  
23 A desirable level will be established for each indicator. A desirable level is a measurable  
24 amount (i.e., specific number, range or trend) for an indicator to be achieved and  
25 maintained over time. Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other  
26 sources of direction will be established locally by the planning team with input from the LCC.  
27 Achievement of desirable levels may require a longer time frame than the modelling  
28 horizon.

### 29 30 31 Management Zones

32  
33 Management zones are geographical areas within a management unit that provide spatial  
34 context when preparing the LTMD or planning proposed operations. The two types of  
35 management zones are strategic management zones and operational management zones.

36  
37 A strategic management zone may influence strategic analysis, and operational planning.  
38 Strategic management zones may represent either strategic objectives (e.g., caribou habitat  
39 objectives, achieve landscape pattern objectives) or areas with distinct ecological  
40 characteristics. Strategic zones are also used to assess the spatial distribution of harvest over  
41 the first four FMP periods (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

1 The degree to which strategic management zones are represented in the model depends on  
2 the strategic models used as the decision support system (i.e., spatial versus non-spatial).  
3 While some zones may be represented in the base model (e.g., ecological basis for different  
4 yield curves), zones usually reflect objectives (e.g., Dynamic Caribou Habitat Schedule for  
5 caribou habitat objectives), and are defined during objective development and  
6 determination of the LTMD.

7

8 Strategic management zones will be identified considering the following criteria:

9

- 10 (a) balance of harvest in proximity to forest resource processing facilities or  
11 demand centres;
- 12 (b) accessibility of harvest (e.g., topography, land ownership, existing road  
13 infrastructure, land use decisions, species at risk);
- 14 (c) the achievement of landscape pattern objectives;
- 15 (d) consistency with strategic access strategy; and
- 16 (e) additional strategic criteria applicable to the management unit (e.g., moose  
17 emphasis areas, enhanced silviculture areas, large deer yards).

18

19 Strategic management zones will be included in the final planning inventory and represented  
20 in the model used to determine the LTMD.

21

22 Operational management zones represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g.,  
23 accessibility, wildlife, fisheries or other constraints on forest operations). Operational  
24 management zones may be used on management units with significant variation in forest  
25 level operational characteristics. If applicable, operational management zones will be  
26 included in the final planning inventory.

27

28

### 29 Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting

30

31 The MNRF district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting between the  
32 planning team, plan advisors, LCC, and First Nation and Métis communities. Part A, Section  
33 3.5.1.1 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement in the  
34 desired forest and benefits meeting. The MNRF district manager may also invite interested  
35 members of the public. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the  
36 background information and to provide a forum for participants to share their respective  
37 interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the  
38 development of objectives, indicators and desirable levels by:

39

- 40 (a) identifying local desired forest and benefits;
- 41 (b) reviewing management objectives, indicators, desirable levels, and targets in  
42 the current FMP;
- 43 (c) reviewing indicators and target achievement from the year five management  
44 unit annual report for the current FMP; and

- 1 (d) reviewing management objectives and indicators from the FMPM and forest  
2 management guides.  
3

4 A summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be prepared.  
5  
6

7 Setting Desired Levels  
8

9 Management objectives will be developed to address required indicators from Figure A-3.  
10 Management objectives may also be developed to address desired forest and benefits  
11 identified by the planning team and LCC with input from the public and First Nation and  
12 Métis communities (e.g., selected wildlife species). The planning team will review and  
13 confirm, update, or revise management objectives from the current FMP. The development  
14 of management objectives will also consider the background information (Part A, Section  
15 1.1.8), in particular, forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), and  
16 recommendations from the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).  
17

18 Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction are  
19 refined through scoping analysis. Scoping analysis is an iterative process that involves a  
20 series of investigations to provide insight to what the forest is capable of producing to  
21 develop realistic and feasible desirable levels for objective indicators. Scoping investigations  
22 will consider implications on wood supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber  
23 resources for the short term, medium term, and long term.  
24

25 The following investigations will be considered in the development of desirable levels:  
26

- 27 (a) An investigation into the ability of the forest to meet forest diversity and  
28 forest cover desirable levels (based on current forest condition and forest  
29 dynamics); and  
30 (b) An investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to continue to  
31 supply forest benefit levels associated with the current FMP.  
32

33 The management objectives, indicators and the timing of assessment for each indicator will  
34 be documented in FMP-10.  
35  
36

37 Harvest Eligibility Criteria  
38

39 Criteria will be developed to identify areas that could reasonably be harvested (i.e., eligible  
40 harvest areas). The criteria will be consistent with the direction and standards in MNRF's  
41 applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., the guide(s) that address the conservation of  
42 biodiversity at the landscape scale) and incorporated in strategic modelling.  
43  
44

- 1 Considerations for the development of the criteria include:
- 2 (a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
  - 3 (b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic
  - 4 constraints);
  - 5 (c) species at risk requirements;
  - 6 (d) strategic and operational management zones;
  - 7 (e) wildlife habitat requirements;
  - 8 (f) industrial wood requirements;
  - 9 (g) previous commitments to harvest areas;
  - 10 (h) provision for continuity of operations; and
  - 11 (i) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.

12

13 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES**

14 This progress checkpoint will confirm support for information and products associated with  
15 the development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

16

17

18 1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

19

20 The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4) will be used as the starting point for the development  
21 of the proposed LTMD.

22

23 The decision support system will be used to conduct strategic analysis. Strategic analysis is  
24 an iterative process used to determine the locations, types and levels of access, harvest,  
25 renewal, and tending activities required to balance the achievement of management  
26 objectives associated with the management of forest cover, and to develop achievable  
27 targets in the proposed LTMD.

28

29 A target will be established for each indicator. A target is a measurable amount (i.e., specific  
30 number, range, or trend) for an indicator to be achieved within a specific timeframe. The  
31 target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target will be  
32 established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. If the target is moving  
33 away from the desirable level in the short term, it must be demonstrated that there is  
34 movement towards the desirable level in the medium or long term. At a minimum, a target  
35 will be established for each indicator assessed during plan implementation for the first 10-  
36 year period of the FMP.

37

38 The establishment of targets for each indicator will consider:

39

- 40 (a) the current forest condition;
- 41 (b) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
- 42 (c) the associated indicator and the desirable level;
- 43 (d) the potential achievement for the short term (10 years), medium term and
- 44 long term; and

1 (e) projections from past FMPs and historical levels of objective achievement.

2  
3 In addition, for harvest level indicators, the targets will also consider:

- 4  
5 (a) historic wood utilization;  
6 (b) current industrial wood requirements;  
7 (c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified  
8 in the Provincial Wood Supply Strategy; and  
9 (d) maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group.

10  
11 The concepts of medium term and long term are indicator specific. The actual timeframes  
12 for medium term and long term are indicator specific and will be identified in FMP-10.

13  
14 Strategic modelling projects how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and  
15 composition in response to different types, levels, and spatial distribution of forest  
16 management activities. Strategic modelling will include 160-year projections. Strategic  
17 modelling will be used to demonstrate that the effects of projected forest management  
18 activities in the proposed LTMD for the period of the FMP provide acceptable projections of  
19 forest management activities in the future.

20  
21 The development of the proposed LTMD will be documented in the analysis package  
22 (Appendix I).

23  
24  
25 Objective Assessment

26  
27 The achievement of applicable management objectives will be assessed using the results of  
28 decision support systems. Objectives will be assessed individually, in relation to indicators,  
29 desirable levels, and targets (FMP-10), and in consideration of other objectives to balance  
30 the achievement of management objectives. The management objective information and an  
31 assessment of objective achievement will be documented in FMP-10. The achievement of  
32 management objectives that do not require decision support systems will also be  
33 documented in FMP-10.

34  
35 Assessment of objectives directly affected by spatial aspects of forest operations are  
36 described in Part A, Sections 1.2.5.2 and 1.3.8. Following spatial assessments, it may be  
37 necessary to re-examine the preferred harvest areas and/or targets to balance the  
38 achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the  
39 desirable levels for the indicators and will have rationale provided.

1 The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

2

3 (a) if the desirable level is achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or  
4 in the future.

5 (b) if the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan  
6 period. If so, the following questions need to be answered:

7 (i) Is the difference between the desirable level and the target substantial?

8 (ii) Will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?

9 (iii) What is the rationale for the difference?

10 (c) if there are trends in objective achievement which raise concerns.

11

12 Assessment of objectives directly associated with forest-related species at risk must consider  
13 the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

14

15

### 16 Available Harvest Area

17

18 The harvest area by forest unit from the strategic analysis for the first 10-year period is the  
19 available harvest area for the FMP. Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not  
20 exceed the available harvest area by forest unit.

21

22 Adjustments to the available harvest area during operational planning will be supported by  
23 analysis demonstrating the achievement of management objectives (spatial and non-spatial)  
24 beyond the 10-year plan period.

25

26 Management zones will be used to address the spatial distribution of harvest areas through  
27 time.

28

29 Documentation of modelling outputs will include:

30

31 (a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-6);

32 (b) projected habitat for selected wildlife species, if identified by the planning  
33 team (FMP-7);

34 (c) projected available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-8); and

35 (d) projected available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or  
36 product group (FMP-9).

37

38

### 39 Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

40

41 The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of the preferred areas  
42 for harvest for the 10-year period. The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will  
43 be selected from the eligible harvest area. In the identification of the preferred areas, the  
44 retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet objectives or guide

1 requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered. The preferred  
2 harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest harvest in the  
3 strategic model, in terms of strategic management zones, age class and/or stage of  
4 management. Visual aesthetics, opportunities for harvesting fuelwood, and operational  
5 management zones will be considered when identifying preferred areas for harvest.

6  
7 The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be identified and portrayed. All  
8 eligible areas that are not identified as preferred areas for harvest are considered to be  
9 optional harvest areas for the 10-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified  
10 and portrayed, and may be ranked in order of preference.

11  
12 The landscape pattern will be assessed to determine whether the identified preferred  
13 harvest areas provide for the achievement of landscape pattern objectives. Changes to the  
14 preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments. The preferred  
15 harvest areas will be incorporated into the decision support system to re-assess the  
16 achievement of management objectives affected by the locations of harvest areas.

17  
18 The assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of  
19 harvest areas will be documented in FMP-10.

20  
21 If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the  
22 assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning  
23 of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.3.8).

24  
25  
26 Spatial Assessment

27  
28 Management objectives and indicators affected by the location of the preferred areas for  
29 harvest for the 10-year period will be assessed for achievement of spatial objectives  
30 following identification of the preferred harvest areas.

31  
32 The projected distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e. 40 years) will be  
33 assessed for:

- 34  
35 (a) feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest (e.g., operational,  
36 accessibility, other land use decisions); and  
37 (b) economic feasibility of the harvest (e.g., balancing wood cost).

38  
39 The projected distribution of harvest for the first four FMP periods will be portrayed.

1 Social and Economic Assessment

2  
3 A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment  
4 will be prepared using a social and economic model, or a qualitative analysis based on the  
5 data in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11, Appendix II). The  
6 assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the  
7 LTMD. The assessment will examine how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the  
8 wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the  
9 communities, forest resource processing facilities, and the other industrial and non-  
10 industrial users of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part A,  
11 Section 1.1.8.11).

12  
13  
14 Risk Assessment

15  
16 A risk assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment will identify risks  
17 associated with the implementation of the LTMD. When identifying risks, the planning team  
18 will consider access limitations, recommendations identified in independent forest audits,  
19 and the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.5).

20  
21 The risk assessment will include an investigation of recent wood utilization (e.g., last 10  
22 years) and other identified risks, and an evaluation of the potential implications on the  
23 achievement of management objectives.

24  
25  
26 1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

27  
28 The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of  
29 objectives (using the assessment of objective achievement), the spatial assessments, the  
30 social and economic assessment, and the risk assessment, and whether the proposed LTMD  
31 provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on  
32 the management unit. The preliminary determination of sustainability will conclude that on  
33 balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired  
34 forest and benefits.

35  
36 The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

- 37  
38 (a) the collective achievement of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);  
39 (b) the preliminary spatial assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);  
40 (c) the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2); and  
41 (d) the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).  
42

1 The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented in the summary of the  
2 proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.7). The documentation of the preliminary determination  
3 of sustainability will:

- 4
- 5 (a) describe how the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on  
6 the management unit;
    - 7 (i) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and  
8 provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable  
9 levels are not achieved;
    - 10 (ii) discuss the preliminary spatial assessment;
    - 11 (iii) discuss the social and economic assessment; and
    - 12 (iv) discuss the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and
  - 13 (b) provide a conclusion that the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the  
14 Crown forest.
- 15

16 The planning team will present the proposed LTMD and the preliminary determination of  
17 sustainability to the LCC. The MNR district manager will follow the requirements for First  
18 Nation and Métis communities in Part A, Section 3.5.1.1.

19  
20

#### 21 1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

22

23 Primary roads provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed,  
24 maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are  
25 normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific  
26 primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will  
27 be completed by a registered professional forester.

28

29 The planning requirements in this section will apply to corridors for new primary roads  
30 which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including  
31 extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration  
32 and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide  
33 corridors

34

35 Primary road corridors will be consistent with projected harvest distribution for the next four  
36 planning periods. Primary road corridors in the previous FMP, within which a road has not  
37 yet been constructed, will be reviewed. If the corridor is confirmed, no further corridor  
38 planning will be required. If changes to the use management strategy for the road are  
39 required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 and Appendix III will apply.

40

41 If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning  
42 requirements in this section will apply.

43

1 In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be  
2 consideration of:

- 3
- 4 (a) the projected harvest distribution for the next four FMP periods (i.e., 40  
5 years);
  - 6 (b) the degree to which physical conditions, identified values, and significant  
7 engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide  
8 opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
  - 9 (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's  
10 Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, management statement of conservation  
11 interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource  
12 stewardship agreements); and
  - 13 (d) the results of consultation with known interested and affected persons,  
14 organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities.
- 15

16 The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

- 17
- 18 (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
    - 19 (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending  
20 operations;
    - 21 (ii) potential effects on identified values; and
    - 22 (iii) providing access to any remote First Nation and Métis communities  
23 which were previously inaccessible by road;
  - 24 (b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section  
25 1.3.6.7) which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance  
26 provisions, and, where appropriate, decommissioning provisions and transfer  
27 provisions; and
  - 28 (c) a consideration of relative costs related to road construction and use  
29 management, including maintenance, transfer and decommissioning costs.
- 30

31 Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new  
32 primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III.

33

34 If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial  
35 park or conservation reserve, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act*,  
36 (2006)(PPCRA) and applicable MNRF policy will apply. The requirements of the Class  
37 Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

38

39 The confirmed corridors from the previous FMP and the alternative corridors for each new  
40 primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified and portrayed.

1 1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

2  
3 To facilitate the public review, a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be  
4 produced. The summary will include:

- 5  
6 (a) text to describe:
- 7 (i) the assessment of objective achievement with rationale for indicators
  - 8 that are not moving towards the desirable level; and
  - 9 (ii) the preliminary determination of sustainability;
  - 10 (iii) the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and
  - 11 (iv) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion
  - 12 how the applicable MNRF guide(s) were considered.
- 13 (b) FMP tables for:
- 14 (i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement (FMP -10);
  - 15 (ii) available harvest area and volume ( FMP-8 and FMP -9); and
- 16 (c) a summary map that portrays:
- 17 (i) preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period;
  - 18 (ii) confirmed primary road corridors;
  - 19 (iii) new alternative primary road corridors; and
  - 20 (iv) if applicable, modified fire response areas.
- 21

22 The summary of the proposed LTMD will be written in a clear and concise manner to  
23 facilitate the public review of the proposed LTMD.

24  
25  
26 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE PROPOSED LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION,**  
27 **DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY AND PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS**

28 This progress checkpoint will confirm support by the MNRF for the information and products  
29 associated with the LTMD, the preliminary determination of sustainability and the primary  
30 road corridors developed in Part A, Section 1.2. to 1.2.7.

31  
32  
33 1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

34  
35 After the requirements in sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, the planning team will  
36 conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.2,  
37 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with  
38 the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

## 1 **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

2

### 3 1.3.1 Introduction

4

5 This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the FMP, in  
6 preparation for stage three of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3). The information  
7 and products which are required to be available at the stage three information centre for the  
8 review of proposed operations are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3.

9

10 Planning efforts from current FMPs will be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in  
11 the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, SGRs and  
12 road use management strategies.

13

14 The selection and confirmation of areas of operations is an iterative process. There will be  
15 adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNRF approval.  
16 Areas of operations will be adjusted as a result of the planning of operational prescriptions  
17 and conditions for areas of concern, the availability of new or better information and in  
18 response to public comments.

19

20 Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations for a FMP for Far North  
21 management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.

22

23

### 24 1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

25

26 Upon completion of the public review of the proposed LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section  
27 2.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2, MNRF will  
28 review any comments received as a result of the public review. A list of required  
29 modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will be prepared, signed, and  
30 certified by an MNRF registered professional forester. Under the authority of the MNRF  
31 regional resources manager, the list of required modifications, and the accompanying  
32 rationale, will be provided to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public  
33 review of the proposed LTMD.

34

35 The plan author will address MNRF's list of required modifications, which may result in  
36 further analysis and modeling being required. The MNRF regional director will provide  
37 preliminary endorsement of the LTMD after the required modifications have been  
38 satisfactorily addressed.

39

40 The MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of  
41 operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the LTMD in the  
42 draft FMP. However, circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the LTMD  
43 (e.g., major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling).

1 A summary of the LTMD, for which the MNR regional director has provided preliminary  
2 endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated version of the summary of  
3 the proposed LTMD that was previously prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.7).

4  
5 **CHECKPOINT: PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

6  
7  
8 1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

9  
10 Harvest, renewal and tending areas will be identified.

11  
12  
13 1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas

14  
15 Based on public comments on the preferred and optional harvest areas at stage two, the  
16 preferred harvest areas will be selected for the 10-year period. Areas selected as preferred  
17 for the 10-year period will become the planned harvest areas. Areas not selected as  
18 preferred harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The planned harvest areas and the  
19 optional harvest areas will be portrayed on map(s).

20  
21 The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area  
22 for each forest unit. The planned harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the  
23 projections of forest operations in the LTMD, in terms of management zone and age class  
24 and/or stage of management. In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and  
25 standards in MNR's approved forest management guide(s) will be considered. The rationale  
26 for the planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will be documented.

27  
28 The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will have unique harvest block identifiers  
29 and will be portrayed on maps.

30  
31 If salvage operations are planned during preparation of the FMP, salvage harvest areas will  
32 be identified and mapped. Salvage area is additional to the planned harvest area and does  
33 not count against the available harvest area.

34  
35 The planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be summarized in FMP-12.

36  
37 The volume associated with the available harvest area and planned harvest area will be  
38 summarized in FMP-13.

39  
40 The planned harvest volumes in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for  
41 the management unit will be identified as unutilized. The area and volume associated with  
42 the planned harvest area and the projected utilization of the planned harvest volume will be  
43 summarized in FMP-14.

1 The projected wood utilization by mill will be summarized in FMP-15.

2  
3

#### 4 1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

5

6 During the 10-year period of the FMP, circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) may cause  
7 some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest. To accommodate such  
8 circumstances, contingency area for harvest operations will be identified and planned. The  
9 contingency area will serve to replace area for harvest during the 10-year period of the FMP,  
10 and will only be used if required.

11

12 Sufficient contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a  
13 minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The contingency  
14 areas will have unique harvest block identifiers. The contingency areas and associated  
15 unique identifiers will be portrayed on maps.

16

17 The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in FMP-16.

18

19 An amendment to the FMP will be required to permit forest operations to proceed in the  
20 contingency area (Part C, Section 2.0).

21

22

#### 23 1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

24

25 Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed on maps for the  
26 10-year period. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas  
27 previously harvested during the current or previous FMP(s) and not yet renewed; areas of  
28 natural disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.

29

30 The analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3), will be used in the planning of  
31 renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations  
32 planned for the 10-year period will be summarized in FMP-17. The levels of renewal and  
33 tending operations will be consistent with the projected levels of the proposed LTMD and  
34 the results of the analysis of silvicultural activities.

35

36

#### 37 1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas

38

39 Silvicultural trial areas are optional and can potentially occur on harvest, renewal or tending  
40 areas. The MNR's silvicultural guide(s) describes the requirements for the preparation,  
41 review and approval of silvicultural trial areas. The FMP will include the following  
42 information for silvicultural trial areas:

43

44 (a) treatment and forest type eligibility;

- 1 (b) limitations (e.g., size and number); and
- 2 (c) any applicable renewal standards.

3  
4 Silvicultural trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural  
5 guide(s). Silvicultural trial areas will be implemented in accordance with an approved SGR  
6 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

7  
8 The planning team will consider what forest types are eligible for trial area implementation.  
9 When determining if any forest types are eligible for trial area implementation, the effect of  
10 a failed trial area on achievement of FMP targets will be considered.

#### 11 12 13 1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

14  
15 There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved FMP are not  
16 completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass  
17 harvest operations allow for harvest of these areas in the new FMP.

##### 18 19 20 1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

21  
22 Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the completion of harvest  
23 operations from the current approved FMP. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be  
24 identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the last AWS of the current  
25 approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed on the operations  
26 maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP.

27  
28 Bridging operations will be eligible for scheduling in the first year of the FMP. Bridging  
29 operations will be limited to three months harvest area from the current FMP and harvest of  
30 bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the FMP. The bridging  
31 harvest areas contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area in the current FMP  
32 but not the new FMP.

##### 33 34 35 1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

36  
37 For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in  
38 two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the  
39 current approved FMP. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has  
40 occurred by the expiry of the current FMP, will be identified to allow for completion of  
41 harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be identified and  
42 mapped, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP. The second-pass harvest  
43 areas do not contribute to the achievement of harvesting the available harvest area of the  
44 new FMP.

1  
2 An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.

3  
4  
5 1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on  
6 Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits

7  
8 For the areas of operations for the 10-year period, including contingency areas, prescriptions  
9 will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all  
10 harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas. Areas of concern conditions will be  
11 developed for all roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits for the 10-year period. These  
12 are referred to as conditions for areas of concern. Part A, Section 1.3.5.2 provides direction  
13 for conditions on regular operations.

14  
15  
16 1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

17  
18 An area of concern is a defined geographic area associated with an identified value that may  
19 be affected by forest management activities. These identified values are portrayed on the  
20 values map(s) for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and include provincial  
21 parks, conservation reserves and all lakes and streams. An operational prescription for  
22 harvest, renewal, tending, and protection activities or a condition on a road, landing, or  
23 forestry aggregate pit is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate  
24 adverse effects of forest management operations on the value.

25  
26 Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of  
27 operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or  
28 regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the SGRs), individually or in combination.  
29 Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or  
30 unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific values.

31  
32 Operational conditions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations)  
33 or modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) individually or  
34 in combination. Modified operations may be normal operations with conditions (e.g., timing,  
35 equipment), or unique conditions that are developed to protect or manage specific values.

36  
37 The proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be  
38 documented in FMP-11. All areas of concern will be clearly identified on the operations  
39 maps, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas  
40 of concern will also be portrayed on the maps. All operational prescriptions and conditions  
41 for areas of concern documented in FMP-11 will be cross-referenced to the operations  
42 maps, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix IV).

43

1 For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest  
2 areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of  
3 concern from the current approved FMP may be used and documented in FMP-11. The  
4 operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified on the maps,  
5 and where practical, the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will  
6 also be portrayed on the maps.

7  
8 Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised  
9 in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.  
10 Operational prescriptions and conditions will be developed for individual areas of concern,  
11 or groups of areas of concern with a common value(s), using the forest management guides  
12 identified by MNRFB as applicable to the management unit. An operational prescription or  
13 condition for an area of concern may also be proposed from another planning exercise for  
14 inclusion in the FMP. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational  
15 prescription or condition for an area of concern.

#### 16 17 18 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide

19  
20 If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or  
21 guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription or condition to be used for a particular value,  
22 that specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational  
23 prescription or condition. Documentation of the operational prescription or condition, and  
24 the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in FMP-11 and no  
25 supplementary documentation is required.

26  
27 If a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a  
28 forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational  
29 prescription or condition, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions  
30 and conditions developed by the planning team. In such situations, the operational  
31 prescription or condition will be recorded in FMP-11 as an exception. The rationale for that  
32 exception will be provided in the supplementary documentation, and the monitoring  
33 program for the FMP will describe the methods that will be used to determine the  
34 effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

#### 35 36 37 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Species at Risk

38  
39 If specific direction for the species at risk and its habitat is provided in an approved forest  
40 management guide, that direction must be used in the development of the operational  
41 prescription or condition(s) and may only be modified in accordance with the requirements  
42 of the ESA (e.g., by an authorization issued or a regulation made under that Act).  
43 Documentation of the operational prescription and condition(s), and the source of direction  
44 will be provided in FMP-11 and no supplementary documentation is required.

1  
2 If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the  
3 planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition(s), in accordance with  
4 the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning  
5 team. The operational prescription or condition(s) for a species at risk must be prepared  
6 with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk and the ESA, must satisfy  
7 the requirements of the ESA and be consistent with supporting policies. Documentation of  
8 the operational prescription and condition(s) will be provided in FMP-11 and in the  
9 supplementary documentation as required.

10  
11 Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under  
12 the ESA, reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the  
13 species, will be considered and documented.

14  
15

#### 16 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises

17  
18 An operational prescription or condition that directly relates to forest management activities  
19 may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning  
20 exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

21  
22 The proposed operational prescription or condition will be made available for public review.  
23 If the public review supports the proposed operational prescription or condition, no further  
24 planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription or condition, and its  
25 source, will be documented in FMP-11. The consideration of the comments received from  
26 interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities at  
27 stage three, and the rationale for the operational prescription or condition, will be  
28 documented in the form prescribed in Appendix IV.

29  
30 If the public review at stage three does not support the proposed operational prescription or  
31 condition, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in  
32 accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed  
33 by the planning team.

34  
35

#### 36 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team

37  
38 For some value(s), an approved forest management guide may not provide specific direction  
39 or recommendations, no forest management guide may exist, or a proposed operational  
40 prescription or condition may not have been developed in another planning exercise. In  
41 addition, as described in the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions from  
42 a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations  
43 (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired.  
44 In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition.

1 In the development of the operational prescription or condition, there will be consideration  
2 and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, and  
3 participation of interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis  
4 communities. For an operational prescription or condition developed for an area of concern  
5 that involves a cultural heritage resource value, tourism or recreational value, there will be  
6 consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis  
7 techniques, in the development of the operational prescription or condition.

8  
9 The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription or condition will  
10 include:

- 11  
12 (a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest  
13 management operations on the value(s) in the area of concern; and  
14 (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative  
15 operational prescription or condition in preventing, minimizing or mitigating  
16 those potential effects.

17  
18 The selection of the proposed operational prescription or condition will be based on a  
19 comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions or  
20 conditions.

21  
22 The proposed operational prescription or condition will be documented in FMP-11.  
23 Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational  
24 prescriptions or conditions, the participation of interested and affected persons,  
25 organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, and the rationale for the proposed  
26 operational prescription or condition will be provided in the supplementary documentation  
27 of the FMP, in the form prescribed in Appendix IV.

#### 28 29 30 1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

31  
32 For harvest, renewal, and tending areas, SGRs will be developed (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4),  
33 conditions on regular operations will be identified, and any requirements for planned  
34 clearcuts will apply.

#### 35 36 37 Silvicultural Ground Rules

38  
39 The SGRs will serve as the prescriptions for regular operations within areas of operations for  
40 the 10-year period of the FMP, and naturally disturbed areas that are harvested. The SGRs  
41 will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of  
42 the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNRF as applicable to the  
43 management unit. The SGRs will be documented in FMP-4.

44

1 For the planned areas of operations for the 10-year period, the applicable SGRs will be  
2 identified, portrayed, and cross-referenced to FMP-4. For candidate areas of bridging  
3 operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2),  
4 the applicable SGRs from the current approved FMP will be identified.

5  
6 The information on the operations maps represents the best estimate of the site conditions  
7 that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the  
8 planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the  
9 actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified  
10 in the FMP, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs can be  
11 selected.

12  
13 The situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur will be  
14 described in the FMP.

15  
16 The planning team will identify the planned levels of renewal and tending activities (FMP-17)  
17 and associated expenditures (FMP-19) required to achieve objectives described in the FMP.

18  
19 For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two  
20 passes. The planning team will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will  
21 achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

22  
23

#### 24 Conditions on Regular Operations

25  
26 Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in  
27 accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect important ecological features that are not  
28 addressed by operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests,  
29 wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting)  
30 will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire  
31 management unit or for specific strategic or operational management zones.

32  
33 Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised  
34 in the development of conditions on regular operations. Conditions on regular operations  
35 will be developed for important ecological features using the forest management guides  
36 identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit.

37  
38 Conditions on regular operations, described in MNRF's applicable guide(s) (e.g., guide  
39 relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the  
40 FMP.

41 If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the  
42 planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. In addition, as described in the  
43 requirements for conditions on regular operations from a forest management guide, a  
44 change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a

1 forest management guide may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will  
2 develop conditions on regular operations and the rationale for the change from the specific  
3 direction or recommendation will be documented in the FMP.

4  
5  
6 Conditions on Regular Operations for Species at Risk

7  
8 If specific direction for the species at risk and its habitat is provided in an approved forest  
9 management guide, that direction must be used in the development of the conditions on  
10 regular operations and may only be modified in accordance with the requirements of the  
11 ESA (e.g., by an authorization issued or a regulation made under that Act).

12  
13 If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the  
14 planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. The conditions on regular  
15 operations for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of MNR staff with  
16 expertise in species at risk and the ESA, must satisfy the requirements of the ESA and be  
17 consistent with supporting policies.

18  
19 Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under  
20 the ESA, reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the  
21 species, will be considered and will be documented.

22  
23  
24 Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts

25  
26 As described in Part A, Section 1.2.5.2, areas for harvest operations using the clearcut  
27 silviculture system will be selected using the direction and standards in MNR's applicable  
28 forest management guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and  
29 site scales).

30  
31 For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silviculture system, the required area of  
32 stand-level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNR's  
33 applicable forest management guide(s). The area of stand-level residual will be identified  
34 and mapped in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s).

### 1 1.3.6 Roads

2

3 The planning requirements for new primary, branch, and operational roads that are required  
4 to access harvest areas, including contingency areas, that are planned to be constructed  
5 during the 10-year period of the FMP, are described in this section. Planning requirements  
6 for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new  
7 operational roads within operational road boundaries, for the ten-year period, including any  
8 contingency areas are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also  
9 described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

10

11 The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural  
12 Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval  
13 of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP. The planning of water crossings  
14 will be conducted in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1.

15

16 For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the road corridor  
17 planning and planning of operational roads from the current approved FMP will apply. Each  
18 proposed new primary, branch and operational road and associated use management  
19 strategy will be identified in FMP-18 and portrayed.

20

21 The planning of roads must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy  
22 direction.

23

24

#### 25 1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

26

27 Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at stage  
28 two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road required for the  
29 20-year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale  
30 for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented.  
31 If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will  
32 be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix III.

33

34 Based on the public comments at stage two, any changes to the use management strategy  
35 (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous FMP will be  
36 documented in FMP-18. Documentation of the rationale for the revised use management  
37 strategy for the road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III.

38

39 Each planned new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the  
40 road will be recorded, in FMP-18. The planned corridor for each primary road will be  
41 portrayed. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the 10-  
42 year period of the FMP will be identified.

43

44

1 1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

2

3 Branch roads are roads, other than primary roads, that branch off existing or new primary or  
4 other branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management  
5 unit. Whenever a new road, other than a primary or operational road, is required to provide  
6 access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a  
7 branch road.

8

9 The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads  
10 which are required for forest management purposes for the 10-year period of the FMP,  
11 including extensions to existing branch roads.

12

13 For each new branch road, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified, based on  
14 consideration of:

15

- 16 (a) the degree to which the physical conditions, identified values and significant  
17 engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide  
18 opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;  
19 (b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's  
20 Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park  
21 management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship  
22 agreements); and  
23 (c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and  
24 First Nation and Métis communities.

25

26 The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for  
27 each new branch road. Each proposed new branch road will be identified in FMP-18. For  
28 each new branch road, a use management strategy will also be developed, in accordance  
29 with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7. Documentation of the rationale  
30 for the proposed corridor, and associated use management strategy for the road, will be  
31 produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III. The road use management strategy will  
32 be recorded in FMP-18.

33

34 A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads.  
35 If so, the rationale can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary  
36 documentation form (Appendix III) for each new branch road to which it applies. A common  
37 use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads. If so, the use  
38 management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary  
39 documentation form (Appendix III) for each new branch road to which it applies.

40

41 The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the 10-year period will be portrayed.

42

43

1 1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

2  
3 The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by  
4 a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the preparation of the FMP, these  
5 crossings will be planned for the portion of the road that will be constructed during the 10-  
6 year period.

7  
8 For each crossing of an area of concern, there will be a determination and documentation of:

- 9  
10 (a) locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed; and  
11 (b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure,  
12 construction methods, mitigative measures).

13  
14 The determination of locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed,  
15 and construction conditions, will involve consideration and documentation of:

- 16  
17 (a) identified values;  
18 (b) applicable MNRF guide(s);  
19 (c) the results of discussions with known affected persons, organizations, and  
20 First Nation and Métis communities; and  
21 (d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

22  
23 The conditions on construction within an area of concern will be finalized in the applicable  
24 AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions described in the FMP.

25  
26 For each new primary and branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location,  
27 crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS  
28 (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and  
29 Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry  
30 Water Crossings.

31  
32 For each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor  
33 the conditions on construction within an area of concern will be identified and where  
34 practical, portrayed on the operations maps. The conditions on new primary or branch road  
35 construction within an area of concern will be documented in FMP-11. Conditions on a  
36 landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-11.

37  
38 If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a  
39 primary or branch road, the receipt of comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented  
40 in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part D).

41  
42 Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern,  
43 any conditions on the primary road, branch road, or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s)

1 (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
2 documented in the FMP.

3  
4 If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a  
5 provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRFP policy will apply.  
6 The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and  
7 Conservation Reserves will also apply.

8  
9  
10 1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

11  
12 Operational roads are roads within operational road boundaries, other than primary or  
13 branch roads, that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations.  
14 Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest  
15 management purposes, and are often decommissioned.

16  
17 The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

- 18  
19 (a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational  
20 roads may be constructed;  
21 (b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and  
22 (c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational  
23 roads or network of operational roads within each operational road  
24 boundary.

25  
26 The areas within which new operational roads are to be constructed for the 10-year period  
27 will be identified by operational road boundaries. An operational road boundary includes the  
28 harvest area, the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the same harvest  
29 area. Operational road boundaries will be identified and portrayed.

30  
31 For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the construction of  
32 the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern.  
33 The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

- 34  
35 (a) identified values;  
36 (b) applicable MNRFP guide(s);  
37 (c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and  
38 First Nation and Métis communities; and  
39 (d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

40  
41 Conditions may include: no road construction permitted, specified water crossing structures  
42 and methods of construction; timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or  
43 flagging of crossing locations prior to construction; and notification to directly affected  
44 persons and First Nation and Métis communities in advance of crossing construction.

1 The conditions on construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern or  
2 landings within an area of concern will be documented in FMP-11, and where practical,  
3 portrayed on the operations maps. If public comments have been received concerning a  
4 crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of comments will be noted  
5 in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part C).

6  
7 The conditions on construction where a road may cross within an area of concern will be  
8 finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions  
9 described in the FMP.

10  
11 For each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing  
12 structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D,  
13 Section 3.2.5) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries  
14 and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

15  
16 Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any  
17 conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide  
18 relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the  
19 FMP.

20  
21 If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a  
22 provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRF policy will apply.  
23 The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and  
24 Conservation Reserves will also apply.

25  
26 Use management strategies will be developed for new operational roads or networks of  
27 operational roads within operational road boundaries (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) and  
28 documented in the format prescribed in Appendix III. A common use management strategy  
29 may apply to multiple new operational roads or networks of operational roads. The use  
30 management strategy will be documented in FMP-18 for the new operational road or  
31 network of operational roads to which it applies.

32  
33

#### 34 1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

35  
36 Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
37 licensee as described in Part A<sup>1</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used  
38 for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>2</sup>,

---

<sup>1</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990,c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>2</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal

1 will be documented in FMP-18. The associated use management strategy for each existing  
2 road or road network will also be documented in FMP-18. Each existing road or road  
3 network documented in FMP-18 will be portrayed.

4  
5 If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an  
6 existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section  
7 1.3.6.7 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or  
8 road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III. Each proposed or  
9 changed use management strategy will be documented in FMP-18.

10  
11 If an existing road required for forest management purposes traverses a provincial park or  
12 conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRF policy will apply. The additional  
13 requirements of the PPCRA will not apply in the recreation/utilization zone of Algonquin  
14 Park. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and  
15 Conservation Reserves will also apply.

16  
17  
18 Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

19  
20 If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
21 during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern, the  
22 appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g.,  
23 guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in  
24 FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

25  
26 If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
27 during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area  
28 of concern, any conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g.,  
29 guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in  
30 the FMP.

31  
32 The conditions on the use and maintenance of existing roads and landings must be informed  
33 in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

34  
35 1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits

36  
37 By regulations under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, a person engaged in forest operations on  
38 Crown land is exempt from subsection 34(1) of that Act, as amended from time to time (i.e.,  
39 the requirement for an aggregate permit to operate a pit), if the following criteria are  
40 satisfied:

---

highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

- 1 (a) a FMP for the management unit has been approved;  
2 (b) the aggregate is required for a forest access road in a management unit;  
3 (c) aggregate is extracted:  
4 (i) no closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table; or  
5 (ii) closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table if:  
6 • the proposed site is remote or isolated; and  
7 • the excavation limit of the site is not within:  
8 – 500 metres of a coldwater stream;  
9 – 1000 metres of a waterwell, whether dug or drilled; and  
10 – 5000 metres of a receptor (e.g., residences or facilities where people  
11 sleep {nursing homes, hospitals, trailer parks, camping grounds};  
12 schools; day-care centres).  
13 (d) aggregate extraction will be completed within 10 years from the  
14 commencement of the pit; and  
15 (e) the pit is established within:  
16 (i) an approved new primary or branch road corridor in the FMP and the  
17 AWS;  
18 (ii) an approved harvest area in the FMP and in the AWS;  
19 (iii) an approved operational road boundary in the FMP and in the AWS; or  
20 (iv) an approved aggregate extraction area in the FMP and in the AWS  
21 located within 500 metres of an existing forest access road.  
22

23 Aggregate pits that satisfy these criteria are hereafter referred to as “forestry aggregate  
24 pits”.

### 27 Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

28  
29 Forestry aggregate pits must be operated in accordance with the operational standards set  
30 out in Appendix V.

31  
32 Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits as set out in Appendix V will be  
33 documented in the FMP.

### 36 Aggregate Extraction Areas

37  
38 Aggregate extraction areas identify known sites of aggregate where a forestry aggregate pit  
39 is planned to be established. Aggregate extraction areas will be within 500 metres of an  
40 existing forest access road that is outside:

- 41  
42 (a) an approved harvest area;  
43 (b) an operational road boundary;  
44 (c) a primary road corridor; or

1 (d) a branch road corridor.  
2

3 Aggregate extraction areas will be identified for the 10-year period.  
4  
5

6 Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits  
7

8 The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF's  
9 guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be  
10 documented in the FMP. Conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits must be  
11 informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.  
12

13 If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, the appropriate conditions, as  
14 described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and  
15 site scales), will be documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations  
16 maps.  
17

18 If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
19 during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an  
20 area of concern, any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in MNRF's guide(s)  
21 (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
22 documented in the FMP.  
23  
24

25 1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies  
26

27 For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
28 licensee as described in Part A<sup>3</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used  
29 for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>4</sup>,  
30 a use management strategy is required. A use management strategy includes:  
31

- 32 (a) maintenance provisions;
- 33 (b) monitoring provisions;
- 34 (c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial  
35 resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;

---

<sup>3</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990,c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>4</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

- 1 (d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee is to transfer the  
2 responsibility for the road or road network to MNRF in the next 20 years, and  
3 the operating year in which the transfer is intended to occur;
- 4 (e) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer  
5 responsibility beyond the period of the FMP, MNRF will provide a preliminary  
6 indication for the management intent for the road or road network;
- 7 (f) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer  
8 responsibility within the plan period, MNRF will provide the management  
9 intent for the road or road network; and
- 10 (g) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer  
11 responsibility within the plan period and MNRF’s management intent is to not  
12 maintain the road for public use, the activities required prior to transfer,  
13 including potential removal of water crossings will be documented (e.g.,  
14 decommissioning, signs).

15  
16 Road use management strategies must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA  
17 policy direction.

18  
19 For each new or existing road or road network, the use management strategy will be  
20 described in FMP-18. If a change is proposed to the future use management for an existing  
21 road, the road will be identified and portrayed.

22  
23 If the responsibility of a road is to be transferred during the implementation of the FMP, an  
24 amendment to the FMP will be required (Part C, Section 2.0).

25  
26  
27 **1.3.7 Expenditures**

28  
29 The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be  
30 identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the  
31 implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of  
32 expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-19.

33  
34  
35 **1.3.8 Spatial Assessment**

36  
37 If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the  
38 assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning  
39 of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

40  
41  
42

1 1.3.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

2  
3 An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types, levels and spatial distribution of  
4 harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the LTMD  
5 will be prepared. The assessment will:

- 6  
7 (a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the  
8 projections in the LTMD;  
9 (b) compare the location of harvest areas to the projections in the LTMD;  
10 (c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the  
11 selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;  
12 (d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest  
13 volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and  
14 (e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on  
15 the achievement of the LTMD.  
16

17 The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the  
18 development of the LTMD. The proposed operations for the 10-year period will be  
19 incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.  
20

21 If proposed types, levels, and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections  
22 in the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be  
23 provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or sustainability, it  
24 may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the 10-year period, and complete the  
25 required planning and assessment of operations.  
26  
27

28 1.3.10 Determination of Sustainability

29  
30 In the preparation of a FMP, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves  
31 updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), based on  
32 the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the FMP provides for the  
33 sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management  
34 unit.  
35

36 The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be updated to reflect  
37 changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments if  
38 applicable (Part A, Section 1.3.8).  
39

40 The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives  
41 and the comparison of proposed operations to the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.9), and will  
42 conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made  
43 towards the desired forest and benefits.  
44

1 The determination of sustainability will consider:

2

- 3 (a) the collective achievement of objectives;
- 4 (b) the spatial assessment;
- 5 (c) the social and economic assessment; and
- 6 (d) the risk assessment.

7

8 If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not  
9 achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine  
10 whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the  
11 desirable levels will be achieved.

12

13 The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

14

- 15 (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on  
16 the management unit, and discuss:
  - 17 (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide  
18 rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are  
19 not achieved;
  - 20 (ii) the preliminary spatial assessment;
  - 21 (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
  - 22 (iv) the risk assessment; and
- 23 (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the  
24 Crown forest.

25

26

### 27 1.3.11 Summary Map

28

29 A summary map(s) will be prepared and available at stage three. The summary map(s) will  
30 include:

31

- 32 (a) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year  
33 period of the FMP;
- 34 (b) the optional areas for harvest operations;
- 35 (c) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are  
36 required for the next 20 years;
- 37 (d) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year  
38 period of the plan; and
- 39 (e) past and approved harvest operations for the current FMP, and the previous  
40 10 years.

41

42

43

1 1.3.12 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

2  
3 After the requirements in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, the planning team  
4 will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
5 2.3.3.3, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance  
6 with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

7  
8  
9 **1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest**  
10 **Management Plan**

11  
12 1.4.1 Introduction

13  
14 This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of  
15 the draft FMP, in preparation for stage four of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4).

16  
17  
18 1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

19  
20 Following the public review of planned operations for the 10-year period, the planning team  
21 will compile comments that were received from the public. The MNR will also compile  
22 comments that were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the  
23 agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A,  
24 Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5. The planning team  
25 will review the comments, consider if changes to the planned operations are required and  
26 make the necessary changes. The monitoring and assessment programs will be developed  
27 (Part B, Section 4.7) for forest operations inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of  
28 regeneration (FMP-20), and monitoring of roads and water crossings, that will be conducted  
29 during the period of the FMP. If applicable, a monitoring and assessment program will be  
30 developed for a species where the FMP is designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit  
31 Instrument (Part B, Section 4.7.5). The fire prevention and preparedness measures will be  
32 prepared (Part B, Section 4.8) and included in the forest management plan. The draft FMP  
33 will be produced in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B.

34  
35 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page  
36 (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the draft FMP. The approval page will note the forest information  
37 portal submission identifier. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18  
38 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, Figure B-1B will be included in the draft FMP. The  
39 FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with  
40 electronically submitted FMPs. For those components of the draft FMP that require  
41 proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those  
42 components will also sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed  
43 in Part B, Figure B-1C. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official

1 of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The  
2 MNRF does not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft FMP.

3  
4 A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-2. The List of  
5 Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the  
6 recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions  
7 for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations  
8 (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide(s). The List of  
9 Exceptions will accompany the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

10 Prior to submission of the draft FMP to MNRF, the plan author will ensure that:

- 11
- 12 (a) the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the
  - 13 FMPM;
  - 14 (b) all calculations are correct;
  - 15 (c) the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
  - 16 (d) the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.
- 17  
18

#### 19 1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

20

21 The plan author will submit the draft FMP for MNRF review on or before the scheduled date  
22 for draft plan submission.

23  
24 The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft FMP to the LCC. At  
25 the request of the LCC, an electronic copy of the draft FMP, or paper copies of specified  
26 sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the LCC for review. After that review, the LCC  
27 will prepare a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with  
28 the draft FMP. The statement will be provided to the MNRF district manager for inclusion in  
29 the draft FMP that is available for public review.

#### 30 31 32 1.4.4 MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

33

34 The MNRF regional resources manager will confirm that the draft FMP is complete before  
35 the commencement of the MNRF review.

36  
37 A period of 60 days is provided for MNRF review of the draft FMP and to provide the  
38 preliminary list of required alterations to the sustainable forest licensee. In most situations,  
39 MNRF reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to,  
40 the planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have  
41 received preliminary MNRF support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the  
42 plan (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The MNRF will also have reviewed the LTMD, as part of the  
43 MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, prior to the planning of  
44 operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

1 The purpose of the MNRF review of the draft FMP is to confirm that the plan meets the  
2 requirements of the FMPM. The review will also confirm:

- 3
- 4 (a) relevant policies and obligations have been considered;
  - 5 (b) forest management guides have been properly used and consistently applied;
  - 6 (c) identified exceptions are acceptable;
  - 7 (d) planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are  
8 reflected in the draft FMP; and
  - 9 (e) the plan is complete, calculations are correct, and that the plan is  
10 understandable by those who must refer to, implement, and monitor the  
11 implementation of the plan.
- 12  
13

#### 14 1.4.4.1 MNRF's Preliminary List of Required Alterations

15

16 The product of the MNRF review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons  
17 for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNRF  
18 reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the LCC.

19

20 The MNRF person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will  
21 coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations  
22 from MNRF reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10  
23 days before the completion of the 60-day MNRF review period. The coordinator will collate  
24 the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the  
25 plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating  
26 to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNRF registered professional forester.

27

28 In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNRF regional  
29 resources manager will resolve any disagreements among MNRF reviewers. Under the  
30 authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the preliminary list of  
31 required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft FMP. The plan  
32 author will submit the preliminary list of required alterations for inclusion with the draft  
33 FMP that is available for public review.

34  
35

#### 36 1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary

37

38 A draft FMP summary will be prepared. The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public  
39 review of the draft FMP, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for  
40 their own use. The content requirements of the FMP summary are prescribed in Part B,  
41 Section 7.0.

42

43 The summary will be submitted to the MNRF regional resources manager at least 30 days  
44 before the information centre to review the draft FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4). A French

1 version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French  
2 versions of the draft FMP summary. The draft FMP summary will be available with the draft  
3 FMP that is available for public review.

4  
5

#### 6 1.4.6 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan

7

8 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, the draft FMP, the preliminary list of required  
9 alterations, and the draft FMP summary, will be available for public review at the office of  
10 the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.

11

12 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, interested and affected persons, organizations, and  
13 First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF  
14 office to discuss the draft FMP.

15

16 The English and French versions of the draft FMP summary will be available for public  
17 distribution, upon request.

18

19

#### 20 1.4.7 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

21

22 After the requirements in Sections 1.4.1 to 1.4.6 have been completed, the planning team  
23 will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
24 2.3.3.4, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance  
25 with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

26

27

### 28 **1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan**

29

#### 30 1.5.1 Introduction

31

32 This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft FMP, and MNRF review  
33 and approval of the FMP, in preparation for stage five of public consultation (Part A, Section  
34 2.3.3.5).

35

36 During the public review of the draft FMP, the plan author may discuss the preliminary list of  
37 required alterations with MNRF reviewers to determine how required alterations will be  
38 addressed in the revision of the FMP.

39

40

#### 41 1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations

42

43 Following the public review of the draft FMP and MNRF's preliminary list of required  
44 alterations, the plan author and the MNRF will compile comments that were received from

1 the public. The MNRF will also compile comments that were received from each First Nation  
2 and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation  
3 and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A,  
4 Section 3.5.

5  
6 Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft FMP, the plan author and  
7 planning team will review the comments from the public and First Nation and Métis  
8 communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list  
9 of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to  
10 incorporate comments from the public and First Nation and Métis communities in the final  
11 list of required alterations, the MNRF district manager will decide. An issue resolution  
12 decision (Part A, Section 2.4.1) made during the public review of the draft FMP will be  
13 reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNRF will make the necessary changes  
14 to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest  
15 cover will be certified by an MNRF registered professional forester.

16  
17 Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final  
18 list of required alterations to:

- 19  
20 (a) the sustainable forest licensee;  
21 (b) the plan author; and  
22 (c) the LCC.  
23

24 Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to  
25 describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested to the LTMD or proposed  
26 operations during the public review of the draft FMP to:

- 27  
28 (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and  
29 (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a  
30 requested change has been addressed.  
31

32 The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a  
33 notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific  
34 decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with Steps 5 to 7 of the  
35 issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.  
36  
37

### 38 1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary 39

40 The FMP will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of  
41 required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the  
42 required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the FMP to facilitate the MNRF  
43 review. A list of major changes to the draft FMP will be prepared and will be included in the  
44 supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1 The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the FMP to the LCC. After  
2 that presentation, the LCC will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee’s  
3 general agreement or disagreement with the FMP. The statement will be provided to the  
4 MNRF district manager for inclusion with the approved FMP that is available for public  
5 inspection.

6  
7 If requested by the MNRF regional director, prior to submission of the FMP to MNRF for  
8 review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including  
9 the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the FMP to the MNRF regional  
10 director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and a senior official  
11 of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

12  
13 The draft FMP summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the FMP. A French version  
14 of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French  
15 versions of the FMP summary. The FMP summary will be available with the MNRF-approved  
16 FMP that is available for public inspection.

#### 17 18 19 1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

20  
21 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title,  
22 Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the FMP. The approval page will note  
23 the forest information portal submission identifier. Where a FMP is proposed to be  
24 designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, Figure B-1B will be  
25 included in the FMP. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages  
26 associated with electronically submitted FMPs. For those components of the revised FMP  
27 that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for  
28 those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in  
29 the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1C. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the  
30 plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification  
31 and approval page.

32  
33 The plan author will submit the revised FMP for MNRF review. The plan author will also  
34 submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed  
35 in the revised FMP, to facilitate the MNRF review. A period of approximately 15 days is  
36 provided for MNRF review and approval of the FMP.

37  
38 After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF regional  
39 resources manager, the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager will  
40 sign the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-  
41 1A), and recommend the FMP for approval by the MNRF regional director. The FIM provides  
42 direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.

43

1 The MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s signatures on the title,  
2 certification and approval page certifies that:

- 3
- 4 (a) the FMP has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM and relevant  
5 policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with First  
6 Nation and Métis peoples); and has been prepared using the applicable forest  
7 management guides;
  - 8 (b) all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the  
9 recommendations in the silvicultural guide(s) have been identified; and
  - 10 (c) all operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern which are  
11 exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and  
12 guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.
- 13

14 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional  
15 resources manager’s recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP.  
16 The approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director confirms that the FMP provides for  
17 the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. The MNRF will identify the  
18 forest information portal submission being approved on the Title Certification and Approval  
19 Page. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument  
20 under the ESA, the Minister (or Minister’s delegate) will sign Figure B-1B: Application of  
21 Section 18 of the *Endangered Species Act*. The FIM provides direction for signing approval  
22 pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.

23

#### 24

#### 25 1.5.5 Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

26

27 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5, the MNRF-approved FMP, and the FMP summary will  
28 be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario  
29 Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and  
30 Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss  
31 the FMP.

32

33 The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution,  
34 upon request.

35

#### 36

#### 37 1.5.6 Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

38

39 After the requirements in Sections 1.5.1 to 1.5.5 have been completed, the planning team  
40 will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
41 2.3.3.5, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance  
42 with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

43

1 **1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan**

2

3 The approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP at  
4 the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. The  
5 English and French versions of the approved FMP summary will also be available. Interested  
6 and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an  
7 appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP.

8

## 2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

### 2.1 Introduction

The FMP will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the FMP by interested and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities, and the general public of Ontario are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 2.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, five formal public consultation opportunities will be provided during the preparation and approval of the FMP. In addition, members of the public are encouraged to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC during the preparation of the FMP.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.1). As well, a formal process is provided for any person(s) to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment on specific planned forest management operations in the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.2).

### 2.2 Local Citizens' Committee

#### 2.2.1 Introduction

A LCC, comprised of local citizens' representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the MNR district manager, in accordance with the requirements of the CFSA, for the applicable MNR district or management unit. The LCC will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and MNR in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

#### 2.2.2 Purpose

The LCC will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the FMP by:

- (a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;
- (b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;
- (c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;

- 1 (d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:  
2 (i) participating in its implementation;  
3 (ii) providing advice to the planning team on the content and  
4 presentation of information and maps at information centres;  
5 (iii) having representatives attend and participate at information centres;  
6 and  
7 (iv) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities  
8 that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
- 9 (e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest  
10 and benefits;
- 11 (f) participating in the development, identification and description of  
12 management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
- 13 (g) participating in the development of values maps;
- 14 (h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of  
15 trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the  
16 resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the  
17 planning process;
- 18 (i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
- 19 (j) providing advice to the MNRD when discretionary decisions must be made  
20 (e.g., categorization of amendments, and issue resolution decisions);
- 21 (k) producing regular reports of the committee's activities;
- 22 (l) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
- 23 (m) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the  
24 opportunity:  
25 (i) to provide comments on the preparation and implementation of the  
26 FMP;  
27 (ii) to identify concerns and issues;  
28 (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and  
29 (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and
- 30 (n) providing input to the development of district insect pest management  
31 programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the LCC(s)  
32 invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect  
33 pest management program.
- 34  
35

### 36 2.2.3 Membership and Organization

37

38 The LCC will be a standing committee with members appointed by the MNRD district  
39 manager. Where a management unit crosses MNRD administrative boundaries, the MNRD  
40 district manager from the lead district will establish the LCC in consultation with the other  
41 MNRD district manager(s).

42

1 Normally, there will be a single LCC for a management unit. However, the MNRF district  
2 manager may establish additional LCCs or sub-committees, where a management unit  
3 encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

4  
5 The MNRF district manager and the LCC(s) will develop a protocol which describes how  
6 multiple LCCs or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-  
7 relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation,  
8 development of the LTMD, planning of operations, preparation of local citizen's committee  
9 reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of  
10 a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference  
11 for the LCC(s) (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

12  
13 The membership of the LCC will include local citizens representing a range and balance of  
14 interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of  
15 appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons  
16 directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the FMP are eligible to be  
17 members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

18  
19 Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the LCC should  
20 include:

- 21  
22 (a) local business;  
23 (b) tourism industry;  
24 (c) anglers and hunters;  
25 (d) First Nation and Métis communities;  
26 (e) forest industry;  
27 (f) naturalists;  
28 (g) municipalities;  
29 (h) trappers and other resource users;  
30 (i) other Crown land recreationalists;  
31 (j) forest industry trade unions;  
32 (k) woodworkers;  
33 (l) small independent loggers;  
34 (m) mineral sector;  
35 (n) waterpower sector;  
36 (o) chamber of commerce member or economic development officer;  
37 (p) local environmental groups;  
38 (q) local heritage groups or organizations;  
39 (r) other interest groups; and  
40 (s) the general public.

## 1 2.2.4 Terms of Reference

2

3 Terms of reference for the LCC will be reviewed and updated at the beginning of planning for  
4 the FMP. For each management unit, the LCC(s) will develop a single terms of reference,  
5 with assistance from MNRF. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution,  
6 upon request.

7

8 The terms of reference will contain:

9

- 10 (a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
- 11 (b) the date of each member's appointment to the committee;
- 12 (c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee  
13 members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or  
14 obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
- 15 (d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of  
16 how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
- 17 (e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the FMP, (e.g., meetings  
18 prior to information centres and submission of draft and final plans, dates for  
19 committee reports);
- 20 (f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
- 21 (g) required funding;
- 22 (h) rules, developed by and for the committee, with respect to any procedural  
23 matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning  
24 and plan implementation, including:
- 25 (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
- 26 (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
- 27 (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
- 28 (iv) attendance at information centres by committee members;
- 29 (v) circulation of information among committee members;
- 30 (vi) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member  
31 of the planning team;
- 32 (vii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the  
33 representative to the planning team;
- 34 (viii) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by  
35 individual committee members, and how the committee will address  
36 those declarations; and
- 37 (ix) preparation of committee reports; and
- 38 (i) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-  
39 committees will function (Part A, Section 2.2.3).
- 40
- 41
- 42

## 1 2.2.5 Administration

2

3 The MNRF may reimburse members of the LCC for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in  
4 connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, in  
5 accordance with applicable government policies and directives. The MNRF may provide the  
6 committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team with a reasonable  
7 per diem for attendance at planning team meetings in accordance with applicable  
8 government policies and directives.

9

10 The MNRF will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial  
11 support and typing of committee reports), to assist the committee in the efficient and  
12 effective conduct of its affairs. The MNRF will ensure that training material on the roles and  
13 responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

14

15 The MNRF will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to  
16 the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, to ensure  
17 achievement of the committee purposes.

18

19

## 20 2.2.6 Reports and Records

21

22 During the preparation of the FMP, the LCC will produce reports of its activities.  
23 Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference  
24 for the LCC. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management  
25 unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

26

27 The LCC report for the FMP will include:

28

- 29 (a) a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any;
- 30 (b) the committee's activities during the preparation of the FMP, such as:
- 31 (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during  
32 the planning process;
- 33 (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
- 34 (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members  
35 and recommendations for improvements;
- 36 (iv) participation in the development of the values maps and the LTMD;
- 37 (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., information centres);  
38 and
- 39 (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;
- 40 (c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;
- 41 (d) an assessment of the cooperation provided to the committee by MNRF and  
42 the plan author;
- 43 (e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any  
44 recommendations for change; and

- 1 (f) a discussion of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the  
2 FMP.  
3

4 The committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:  
5

- 6 (a) stage two – a report of committee activities to date;  
7 (b) stage three – an updated report of committee activities to date;  
8 (c) stage four:  
9 (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in  
10 the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP; and  
11 (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest  
12 management plan summary; and  
13 (d) stage five:  
14 (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the  
15 supplementary documentation of the approved FMP; and  
16 (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the FMP summary.  
17

18 The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee will be available for  
19 public review. The final reports of the committee will form part of the supplementary  
20 documentation of the FMP.  
21  
22

### 23 2.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

24  
25 Each FMP and FMP summary will contain a list of all members of the LCC, and their  
26 affiliations, if any.  
27

28 Each FMP will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the  
29 committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan and is included as part of  
30 Part B, Figure B-3. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the  
31 supplementary documentation of the FMP. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-  
32 committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the  
33 agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared.  
34  
35

## 36 2.3 Public Consultation Requirements

### 37 38 2.3.1 Introduction

39  
40 Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages (Figure A-1). The  
41 requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest  
42 management planning are described in Part A, Sections 3.4 and 3.5.  
43

1 2.3.2 General Requirements

2

3 This section describes general requirements of public consultation. These general  
4 requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team and LCC,  
5 MNR's obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the *French Language*  
6 *Services Act, 1990 (FLSA)* and the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993 (EBR)*.

7

8

9 2.3.2.1 Public Notices

10

11 Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation. The timing and contents of  
12 each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 2.3.3. The information that will be  
13 available at each stage of public consultation is also described. Public notices include direct  
14 written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All  
15 references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to  
16 consecutive calendar days.

17

18 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on  
19 MNR's mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

20

- 21 (a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and  
22 their successors, and in particular:
- 23 (i) local school boards;
  - 24 (ii) local medical officers of health;
  - 25 (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local  
26 services board and Chamber of Commerce;
  - 27 (iv) manager, Operational Services, regional office, Ministry of  
28 Transportation;
  - 29 (v) provincial programs engineer, Hydro One;
  - 30 (vi) regional office, MOECC;
  - 31 (vii) Manager, Heritage Program Unit, Ministry of Tourism, Culture and  
32 Sport; (Culture);
  - 33 (viii) Manager, Northern Policy and Planning Unit, Ministry of Tourism,  
34 Culture, and Sport;
  - 35 (ix) regional office, Ministry of Northern Development and Mines;  
36 Department of Indigenous and Northern Affairs (Canada);
  - 37 (x) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic  
38 Region;
  - 39 (xi) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
  - 40 (xii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;
- 41 (b) each First Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management  
42 unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the preparation  
43 and implementation of the FMP;
- 44 (c) appropriate Indigenous organizations;

- 1 (d) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an  
2 interest in forest management planning for the management unit;  
3 (e) members of the LCC; and  
4 (f) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management  
5 planning for the management unit, including those people who may be  
6 directly affected by forest management operations during the 10-year period  
7 of the FMP, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers.  
8 MNRF will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be  
9 directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of  
10 registered trapline areas and mining lands.  
11

12 As additional interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis  
13 communities are identified, MNRF will update the mailing list.  
14

15 Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media. Direct verbal  
16 communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers  
17 necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.  
18

19 Each media and direct written notice will contain:  
20

- 21 (a) an explanation of the purpose of the stage of consultation, and its  
22 relationship to other stages;  
23 (b) a map of the management unit;  
24 (c) a description of the information available;  
25 (d) identification of the forum (e.g., information centre) for consultation, where  
26 applicable, including the location(s), date(s) and time(s);  
27 (e) a request for contributions to the background information;  
28 (f) a request for comments on material available for review;  
29 (g) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under  
30 relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy  
31 Act, (1990); and  
32 (h) the names of MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts and  
33 information concerning how to contact.  
34

35 Additional content requirements of the direct written notice for each stage of public  
36 consultation are described in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.  
37  
38  
39

1 Additional Information Centres

2  
3 The planning team, with advice from the LCC, may choose to hold information centres in  
4 addition to the required information centres at stages three and four. If an additional  
5 information centre(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be  
6 issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

7  
8  
9 Supplemental Notices

10  
11 For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental  
12 notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First  
13 Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

14  
15  
16 2.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens' Committee Communication

17  
18 The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and  
19 affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities to seek their input  
20 into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the LCC. For example,  
21 the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists to identify  
22 recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

23  
24 Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can  
25 arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the LCC at any time  
26 during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members  
27 during non-business hours will be provided.

28  
29  
30 2.3.2.3 Responses to Comments

31  
32 The MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all  
33 written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the  
34 preparation of a FMP that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. The MNRF will  
35 respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single  
36 response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond  
37 in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has  
38 been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been  
39 considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public  
40 consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP  
41 (Part B, Section 6.1).

1 2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act

2

3 The FLSA will govern the French language public consultation requirements for forest  
4 management planning.

5

6 At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

7

8 (a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French,  
9 which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can  
10 be obtained in the French language;

11 (b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French  
12 language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which  
13 indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be  
14 obtained in the English language;

15 (c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at  
16 all information centres or other consultation forums;

17 (d) comment forms will be available in the English and French languages; and

18 (e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French  
19 language comments and submissions.

20

21 For all management units:

22

23 (a) the summary of the proposed LTMD available at stages two and three of  
24 public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2 and 2.3.3.3) will be available on  
25 the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages; and

26 (b) the FMP summary available at stages four and five of public consultation (Part  
27 A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) will be available on the Ontario Government  
28 website in the English and French languages.

29

30

31 2.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights

32

33 Under the provisions of the EBR, MNRF will place Registry Information Notices on the  
34 provincial Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each  
35 stage of public consultation.

36

37 A Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry when the public  
38 notice is issued at stage one of public consultation. At each successive stage of public  
39 consultation, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental  
40 Registry.

41

42 The MNRF's guide for the preparation of Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for  
43 policies, acts and regulations provides guidance to prepare these notices.

44

1 2.3.3 Formal Public Consultation

2  
3 Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in FMP preparation  
4 and approval.

5  
6  
7 2.3.3.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

8  
9 Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
10 to participate in the development of the FMP. This notice will be issued after the planning  
11 team has completed the necessary preparatory work, to enable the commencement of  
12 formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

13  
14 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 15  
16 (a) to advise the public that the preparation of the FMP for the management unit  
17 is beginning;
- 18 (b) to provide the public access to information to be used in the forest  
19 management planning process;
- 20 (c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in  
21 planning;
- 22 (d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit,  
23 and desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the  
24 management of forest cover; and
- 25 (e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the  
26 planning team, plan author and LCC.

27  
28  
29 Direct Written Notice Requirements

30  
31 In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section  
32 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- 33  
34 (a) a brief description of each stage of public consultation in the preparation of  
35 the FMP;
- 36 (b) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the  
37 planning process;
- 38 (c) a statement that further information about the forest management planning  
39 process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the  
40 plan, is available for the period of plan preparation;
- 41 (d) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background  
42 information, or to identify concerns which need to be addressed during the  
43 planning process, to the plan author, the MNRF and/or the LCC; and

- 1 (e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management  
2 planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager  
3 or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in  
4 Part A, Section 2.4.1).  
5  
6

7 Information and Maps Available  
8

9 The following information and maps will be available to the public at the appropriate MNRF  
10 office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:  
11

- 12 (a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit  
13 (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies  
14 (if any), and MNRF (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is  
15 supplied from the management unit;  
16 (b) the current version of the values maps for the management unit, including  
17 the resource-based tourism values map;  
18 (c) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values  
19 maps or otherwise available in the database; identification of the  
20 methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects  
21 for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;  
22 (d) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to  
23 important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by  
24 forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the  
25 values maps;  
26 (e) a list of the sources of the information used to update the planning inventory;  
27 (f) a landscape pattern map of current forest condition;  
28 (g) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility  
29 assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;  
30 (h) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;  
31 (i) the enhanced management unit annual report for the current FMP and the  
32 final year management unit annual report for the previous FMP, or reports of  
33 past forest operations for the previous 15 years;  
34 (j) the current FMP for the management unit;  
35 (k) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to the  
36 management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how  
37 the public may access these documents;  
38 (l) audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management  
39 generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management and  
40 State of the Forest Reports) and information on how the public may access  
41 these documents;  
42 (m) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.8.1), and information on how the  
43 public may access these documents;

- 1 (n) a list of MNRF's forest management guides which are applicable to the
- 2 management unit, and information on how the public may access these
- 3 documents;
- 4 (o) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the existing First Nation and
- 5 Métis Background Information Report for the current approved FMP;
- 6 (p) copies of MNRF's brochure on forest management planning; and
- 7 (q) a comment form.

8  
9  
10 2.3.3.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

11  
12 Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice, which invites the public  
13 to review the proposed LTMD for the forest. Information and maps will be available for  
14 public review and comment at the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the  
15 sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the  
16 material.

17  
18 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 19  
20 (a) for the public to review and comment on:
  - 21 (i) the proposed LTMD for the forest;
  - 22 (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred
  - 23 areas for harvest operations, during the 10-year period of the plan;
  - 24 (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new
  - 25 primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and
- 26 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in
- 27 planning.

28  
29  
30 Direct Written Notice Requirements

31  
32 In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section  
33 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- 34  
35 (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at this stage of public
- 36 consultation (i.e., the LTMD for the forest);
- 37 (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the
- 38 appropriate MNRF office(s) and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
  - 39 (i) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and
  - 40 (ii) a summary map(s) of:
    - 41 • the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the
    - 42 plan; and
    - 43 • the confirmed primary road corridors and alternative corridors for
    - 44 each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;

- 1 (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
2 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
3 date will be provided);
- 4 (d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of  
5 any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
6 recommendations from the LCC; and
- 7 (e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management  
8 planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR district manager  
9 or the MNR regional director (in accordance with the process described in  
10 Part A, Section 2.4.1).

11  
12

### 13 Information and Maps Available

14

15 In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available  
16 at stage one of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at  
17 the appropriate MNR office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee when the  
18 public notice is issued:

19

- 20 (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the draft First Nation and Métis  
21 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- 22 (b) a summary of public comments and submissions, which have been received  
23 to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
- 24 (c) a summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;
- 25 (d) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest, including the summary map  
26 (Part A, Section 1.2.7);
- 27 (e) the analysis package;
- 28 (f) FMP-1 through FMP-10;
- 29 (g) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be  
30 harvested during the 10-year period of the plan;
- 31 (h) maps which portray:
- 32 (i) the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the  
33 plan;
- 34 (ii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current FMP  
35 and the previous 10 years;
- 36 (iii) confirmed primary road corridors; and
- 37 (iv) alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for  
38 the next 20 years;
- 39 (i) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion how  
40 the applicable MNR guide(s) were considered;
- 41 (j) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the  
42 alternative corridors for each new primary road;
- 43 (k) a request for the public to provide additional information relating to  
44 important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by

- 1 forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the  
2 values maps;  
3 (l) a summary report of the activities of the LCC to date; and  
4 (m) a comment form.  
5

6 The summary of the proposed LTMD will also be available for public review on the Ontario  
7 Government website during the 30-day public review period. The summary of the proposed  
8 LTMD will be available for public distribution, upon request. Interested and affected persons  
9 and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the  
10 proposed LTMD.  
11

12

### 13 2.3.3.3 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

14

15 Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
16 public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed  
17 planning of operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan. The public  
18 notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.  
19

20

21 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

22

- 23 (a) for the public to review and comment on:  
24 (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
25 10-year period of the plan;  
26 (ii) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-  
27 year period of the plan; and  
28 (iii) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of  
29 the plan; and  
30 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in  
31 planning.  
32

33

34

### 35 Direct Written Notice Requirements

36

37 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A,  
38 Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:  
39

40

- 41 (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre  
42 (i.e., the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-  
43 year period;  
44 (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the  
information centre:  
(i) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD;  
and

- 1 (ii) a summary map(s) of:  
2 • the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
3 10-year period of the plan; and  
4 • the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads which are  
5 required for the 10-year period of the plan;  
6 (c) a statement that the information and maps available at the information  
7 centre will also be available for review for a 60-day period after the  
8 information centre;  
9 (d) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day  
10 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
11 date will be provided);  
12 (e) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of  
13 any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
14 recommendations from the LCC;  
15 (f) the projected date for draft plan submission; and  
16 (g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management  
17 planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager  
18 or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in  
19 Part A, Section 2.4.1).  
20  
21

### 22 Information and Maps Available

23  
24 In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available  
25 at stage two of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at  
26 the information centre:

- 27 (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the First Nation and Métis  
28 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);  
29 (b) a summary of comments and submissions which have been received to date,  
30 and any responses to those comments and submissions;  
31 (c) the list of required modifications resulting from the public review of the  
32 LTMD;  
33 (d) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD;  
34 (e) the proposed SGRs;  
35 (f) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year  
36 period of the plan; the optional areas for harvest operations; areas of bridging  
37 operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the  
38 proposed contingency areas;  
39 (g) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads, and planned  
40 operational road boundaries which are required for the 10-year period of the  
41 plan;  
42 (h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations  
43 for the 10-year period of the plan:  
44 (i) the proposed aggregate extraction areas;

- 1 (ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of primary,  
2 branch, and operational road crossings of individual, or groups of,  
3 areas of concern;
- 4 (iii) proposed conditions on forestry aggregate pits and landings within  
5 individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
- 6 (iv) proposed conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits  
7 outside of areas of concern; and
- 8 (v) the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for individual,  
9 or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section  
10 1.3.5.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational  
11 prescriptions;
- 12 (i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of  
13 roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee or other  
14 existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes;
- 15 (j) FMP-11 through FMP-20;
- 16 (k) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the preliminary Report on  
17 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);  
18 and
- 19 (l) a summary map(s) of:
- 20 (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
21 10-year period of the plan;
- 22 (ii) the optional areas for harvest
- 23 (iii) the proposed corridors for primary roads which are required for the  
24 next 20 years;
- 25 (iv) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-  
26 year period of the plan; and
- 27 (m) a comment form.

28  
29 At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon  
30 request. In the material available at the information centre, MNRF will include a request for  
31 the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and  
32 values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such  
33 information is not displayed on the values map(s).

34  
35 The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will  
36 attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

#### 37 38 39 2.3.3.4 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

40  
41 Stage four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
42 to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the MNRF review of the  
43 draft FMP. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information  
44 centre.

1 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment  
2 on the draft FMP and MNRF's preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the  
3 public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft  
4 FMP.

5  
6

#### 7 Direct Written Notice Requirements

8

9 In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section  
10 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

11

- 12 (a) a statement that the draft FMP and draft FMP summary are available for public  
13 review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario  
14 Government website during the 60-day public review period;
- 15 (b) a statement that the draft FMP summary may be obtained at the information  
16 centre;
- 17 (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day  
18 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
19 date will be provided);
- 20 (d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any  
21 further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
22 recommendations from the LCC;
- 23 (e) the projected date for MNRF approval of the plan; and
- 24 (f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management  
25 planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or  
26 the MNRF regional director, and identifies the last date to request issue  
27 resolution (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

28  
29

#### 30 Information and Maps Available

31

32 In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available  
33 at stage three of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at  
34 the information centre:

35

- 36 (a) the draft FMP, including the supplementary documentation;
- 37 (b) the draft FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.4.5);
- 38 (c) MNRF's preliminary list of required alterations;
- 39 (d) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the final Report on Protection of  
40 Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and
- 41 (e) a comment form.

42

43 The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will  
44 attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

1 The information and maps will also be available for public review at the office of the  
2 sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public  
3 review period. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an  
4 appointment with MNRF staff at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the draft FMP.

5  
6  
7 Final List of Required Alterations

8  
9 As described in Part A, Section 1.5.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft  
10 FMP, MNRF will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of  
11 required alterations.

12  
13 Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final  
14 list of required alterations to:

- 15  
16 (a) the sustainable forest licensee;  
17 (b) the plan author; and  
18 (c) the LCC.

19  
20 Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to  
21 describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

- 22  
23 (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and  
24 (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a  
25 requested change has been addressed.

26  
27 The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a  
28 notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific  
29 decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with steps 5 to 7 of the  
30 issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

31  
32  
33 **2.3.3.5 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan**

34  
35 Stage five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public  
36 that the MNRF-approved FMP is available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon  
37 approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director.

38  
39 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the FMP has  
40 been approved by the MNRF regional director, and to provide an opportunity for the public  
41 to inspect the MNRF-approved FMP.

1 Direct Written Notice Requirements

2  
3 In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section  
4 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- 5  
6 (a) a statement that the MNRF-approved FMP and FMP summary are available  
7 for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the  
8 Ontario Government website; and  
9 (b) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any  
10 person to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals  
11 Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific  
12 planned operations, in the FMP, in accordance with the process described in  
13 Part A, Section 2.4.2.  
14

15  
16 Information and Maps Available

17  
18 The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the office of the  
19 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website:

- 20  
21 (a) the MNRF-approved FMP, including the supplementary documentation; and  
22 (b) the FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3).  
23  
24

25 2.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

26  
27 After public inspection, the approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year  
28 period of the FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario  
29 Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an  
30 appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP.  
31

32 The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution,  
33 upon request.  
34  
35

36 **2.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment**

37  
38 2.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

39  
40 There are times when a person(s) may identify a concern with the proposed LTMD or  
41 proposed operations in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, long-term FMP  
42 extension, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect  
43 pest management program. When informal discussions do not result in a resolution of the

1 concern, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) of the opportunity to make a  
2 written submission requesting the formal issue resolution process.

3  
4 There may be situations where numerous individuals identify the same issue(s) in their  
5 request for formal issue resolution (e.g., cottage association, municipality). When this  
6 situation occurs, the district manager and/or the regional director may determine that all or  
7 some of the requests be heard together in an issue resolution meeting(s) and may specify  
8 the time, date and location of such meeting(s). The district manager and/or the regional  
9 director will provide an opportunity for the concerned requestors to nominate a  
10 representative(s) to bring forward the issue(s) on their behalf.

11  
12 During the preparation and review of a FMP for the 10-year period, if a request for issue  
13 resolution is received prior to the draft FMP being available for public review, the request  
14 will progress through two stages, if required, starting with the MNRF district manager, and if  
15 required, the MNRF regional director. If a request is received during the period for public  
16 review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution  
17 to the MNRF district manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day  
18 period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for  
19 issue resolution to the MNRF regional director. The last date to request the issue resolution  
20 process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft FMP.

21  
22 If a person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process, there is an  
23 opportunity to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch,  
24 MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations, as  
25 described in Part A, Section 2.4.2.

26  
27 Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned  
28 person(s), the plan author, the MNRF district manager and where applicable, the MNRF  
29 regional director, with opportunities for the involvement of the LCC. For each issue, a  
30 written response will be provided to the concerned person(s) following each stage of issue  
31 resolution which provides the rationale for the decision. The issue resolution documentation  
32 will be summarized and included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. If an  
33 issue resolution decision influences the location or road use management strategy for a  
34 road, or a prescription or condition for an area of concern, the supplementary  
35 documentation for the road or area of concern will reference the summary of issue  
36 resolution that is included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. Planning  
37 required as a result of an issue resolution decision will be undertaken in accordance with the  
38 applicable planning and documentation requirements of the FMPM and the FIM.

39  
40 Figure A-4 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the  
41 opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment.

42  
43

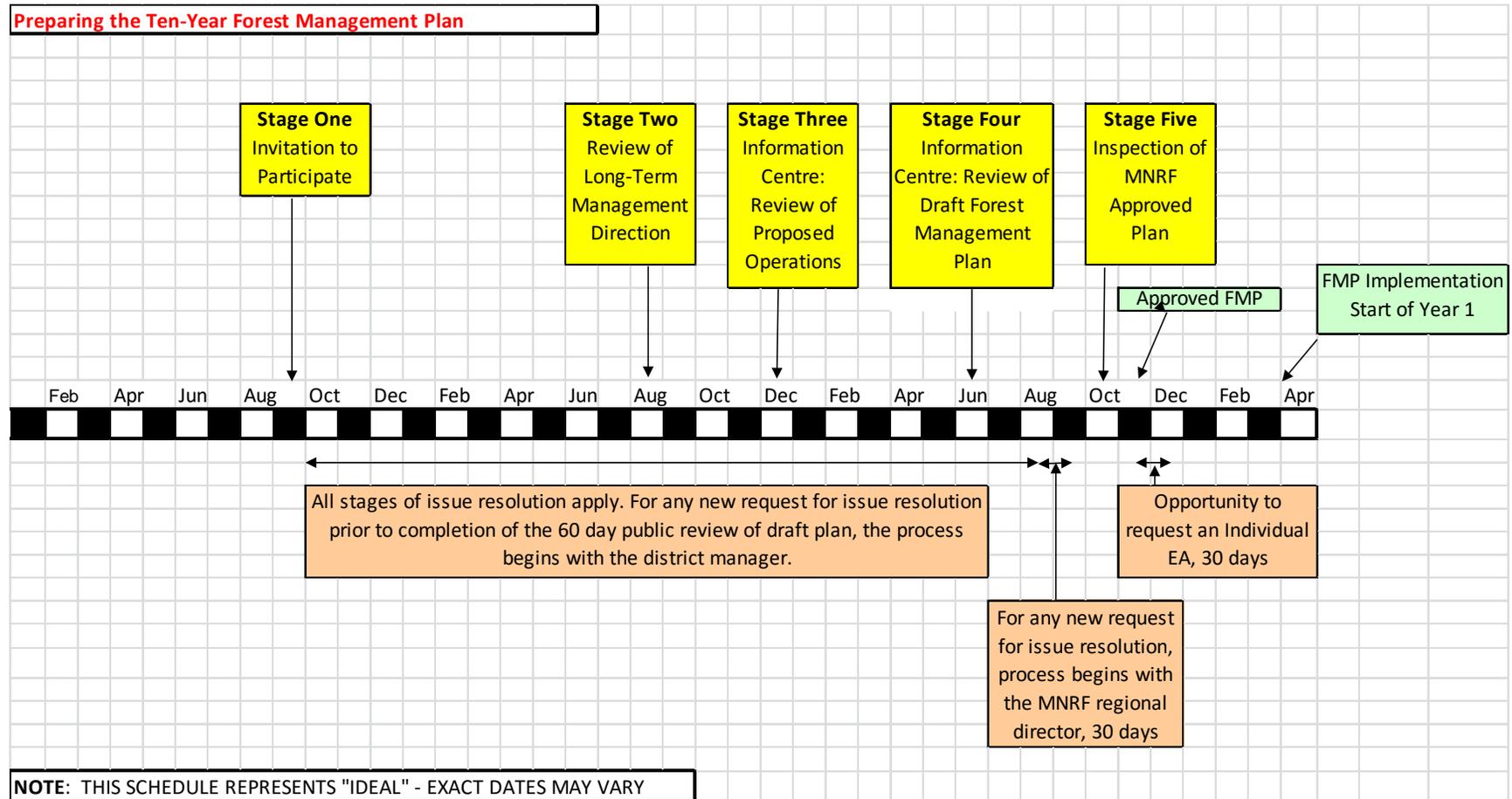
1 2.4.1.1 MNRF District Manager Stage

2

3 The MNRF district manager stage applies to a request received prior to completion of the 60-  
4 day period for public review of the draft FMP.

1 **Figure A-4: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages**

2



3

1

<b>Step</b>	<b>Process</b>
<b>Step 1</b> Request	The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF district manager, which includes a description of the issue, and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.
<b>Step 2</b> Meeting	<p>MNRF will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm the date and location of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue. MNRF will invite the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representatives on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC. If a meeting is arranged, the MNRF district manager will attend.</p> <p>If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF district manager.</p>
<b>Step 3</b> Issue resolved	If the meeting resulted in a resolution on the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.
<b>Step 4</b> District Manager Decision	<p>If the meeting did not provide a resolution, or the meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will provide a written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC and the MNRF regional director, normally within 15 days.</p> <p>The MNRF district manager's written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNRF regional director within 30 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).</p>

2

3

## 4 2.4.1.2 MNRF Regional Director Stage

5

6 The MNRF regional director stage applies when:

7

8 (a) a concerned person(s) requests a review of the district manager's decision;

9 or

10 (b) a new request is received during the 30 days following the completion of the  
11 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.

12

Step	Process
<p><b>Step 5</b> Request</p>	<p>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF regional director, which includes a description of the issue, and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate the scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.</p> <p>Upon receipt of the submission, other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by MNRF that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft FMP has been requested.</p>
<p><b>Step 6</b> Meeting</p>	<p>Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNRF will arrange a meeting of the MNRF regional director, plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC, to seek resolution of the issue.</p> <p>If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF regional director will ask each of the MNRF district manager, the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF regional director.</p>
<p><b>Step 7</b> Regional Director Decision</p>	<p>The MNRF regional director will consider the results of the meeting and/or the written submissions and produce a written decision on the issue, with rationale, normally within 15 days of the meeting. The MNRF regional director will provide a copy of the written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC, and the MNRF district manager.</p> <p>The MNRF regional director's written decision concerning a FMP, amendment to a LTMD, or major amendment will include a statement that if the concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the MNRF regional director's decision, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations. The request must be made during the period for public inspection of the MNRF-approved FMP, approved major amendment, or approved amendment to a LTMD.</p>

1 2.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

2

3 Declaration Order MNR-75 provides an opportunity for an individual to request an  
4 individual environmental assessment in limited circumstances. A request is normally made  
5 when a concerned person is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process  
6 (Part A, Section 2.4.1).

7

8 A request for an individual environmental assessment is only available for:

9

- 10 (a) specific planned operations in the MNRF-approved FMP;  
11 (b) a change to specific planned operations resulting from a major amendment  
12 to a FMP; or  
13 (c) a change to specific planned operations resulting from an amendment to the  
14 LTMD for the FMP.

15

16 A person may request an individual environmental assessment by making a written request  
17 to the Director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC within 30 days of MNRF providing  
18 notice of the following:

19

- 20 (a) approval of a FMP;  
21 (b) approval of a major amendment to a FMP; or  
22 (c) approval of an amendment to the LTMD of a FMP.

23

24 The person making the request for an individual environmental assessment shall include the  
25 following information with their request:

26

- 27 (a) a description of the specific planned operations or change to the specific  
28 planned operations of concern, and a map that identifies the geographic  
29 locations of the specific planned operations or changes to the specific  
30 planned operations;  
31 (b) an explanation of the requester's concern with the specific planned  
32 operations or change to the specific planned operations; and  
33 (c) a description of the requester's participation in the forest management  
34 planning process, including participation in issue resolution.

35

36 The process for administering a request for an individual environmental assessment is set  
37 out in condition 26 of Declaration Order MNR-75.

38

39

## 3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

### 3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning. This section also describes the opportunity to develop customized consultation approaches for First Nation and Métis communities and the consultation requirements if a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation and Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through consultation with First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate accommodate.

Additional requirements regarding the involvement of First Nations in forest management planning for Far North management units added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPPM.

#### 3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities

For the purposes of this manual:

- A First Nation community means a First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- A Métis community means a Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- Traditional uses may include established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights.

For each community that Ontario understands as having established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights and is located in Ontario, the MNRF district manager will consider the following criteria when determining whether the community is a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to a management unit:

- 1 (a) whether the community’s established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or
- 2 treaty rights may be adversely impacted by forest activities, governed by this
- 3 manual, in the management unit.
- 4 (b) whether the community has traditional uses that may be affected by forest
- 5 activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.
- 6 (c) whether the community has a local governance body or reserve in or near
- 7 the management unit.
- 8 (d) whether the community has expressed interest in forest management
- 9 planning or forest operations specific to the management unit.

10

11 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community at least nine  
12 months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the  
13 preparation of the forest management plan to inform the community of the opportunities  
14 to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, including the opportunity  
15 to develop a customized consultation approach (Part A, Section 3.4). This communication  
16 will specify that the customized consultation approach can include some or all of the  
17 elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4 and that the consultation process set out in Part A,  
18 Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply if a customized consultation approach is not agreed  
19 upon.

20

21 This communication will be repeated, for those communities that did not respond to the  
22 initial communication, at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public  
23 consultation process. At least one month prior to the commencement of the formal  
24 consultation process, the MNRF district manager will contact those communities that did  
25 not respond to either communication to confirm that the consultation process set out in  
26 Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply.

27

28 For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or  
29 adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a  
30 process that is not governed by the FMPM.

31

32

### 33 **3.2 Planning Team**

34

35 When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNRF district  
36 manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer an opportunity for a  
37 representative of the community to participate on the planning team. If a First Nation or  
38 Métis community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be  
39 identified by the community’s leadership.

40

41 In their role as members of the planning team, First Nation and Métis community  
42 representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their  
43 communities and to represent their communities on the planning team.

44

1 The MNRF may reimburse the First Nation or Métis member(s) of the planning team for  
2 reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and may provide a reasonable per diem for attendance  
3 at planning team meetings, in accordance with applicable government policies and  
4 directives.

5  
6 If a First Nation or Métis community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a  
7 customized consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the  
8 requirements of Part A, Section 3.4, the approach may describe how the community will  
9 interact with the planning team.

### 12 **3.3 Local Citizens' Committee**

13  
14 When reviewing the membership of the LCC (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the MNRF district  
15 manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer the opportunity for a  
16 representative of the community to participate on the LCC. If a First Nation or Métis  
17 community chooses to participate on the LCC, the representative will be identified by the  
18 community leadership.

19  
20 In their role as member(s) of the LCC, First Nation and Métis community representatives are  
21 expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to  
22 represent their communities on the LCC.

### 25 **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management 26 Planning**

27  
28 A customized consultation approach will provide for the involvement of the First Nation or  
29 Métis community in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

30  
31 If, in response to the MNRF district manager's communications prior to the commencement  
32 of the formal public consultation process, a First Nation or Métis community expresses an  
33 interest in developing a customized consultation approach, representatives of the  
34 community, MNRF, and the plan author will work together to develop the approach. In the  
35 development of the approach, the First Nation or Métis community may choose to co-  
36 ordinate efforts with other First Nation or Métis communities, or seek advice from an  
37 Indigenous organization. An existing customized consultation approach may be considered  
38 in the development of the approach. Where MNRF and the First Nation or Métis community  
39 have entered into an existing consultation agreement or protocol outside of the forest  
40 management planning process, the customized consultation approach will reflect the  
41 agreement or protocol, where applicable. The First Nation or Métis community and MNRF  
42 need to agree to the approach, otherwise the consultation process set out in Part A, Section  
43 3.5 will apply.

44

1 Normally, the customized consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and  
2 MNRF prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a FMP  
3 (stage one). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of stage  
4 one, the requirements described in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply until an agreed upon  
5 approach is developed.

6  
7 If an agreed upon customized consultation approach is developed, the consultation  
8 approach will apply during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If MNRF and  
9 the First Nation or Métis community agree, changes to the customized consultation  
10 approach may be made during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If an  
11 agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed, but the First Nation or  
12 Métis community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

- 13  
14 (a) Part A, Section 3.5, for FMPs;  
15 (b) Part C, Section 8.0, for amendments to FMPs, contingency plans, FMP  
16 extensions, and mid-plan checks; and  
17 (c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

18  
19 The customized consultation approach for each community may address the community's  
20 involvement in some or all of the following:

- 21  
22 (a) the preparation of the FMP;  
23 (b) contingency plans;  
24 (c) FMP extensions;  
25 (d) minor or major amendments to FMPs;  
26 (e) amendments to the long-term management direction;  
27 (f) mid-plan checks;  
28 (g) annual work schedules;  
29 (h) prescribed burn plans;  
30 (i) aerial herbicide and insecticide projects; and  
31 (j) insect pest management programs.

32  
33 In the development of the customized consultation approach, the information and timing  
34 requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that  
35 the schedule for plan preparation and implementation is maintained.

36  
37 The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices,  
38 consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and  
39 submissions, and opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning  
40 team and the LCC. The consultation approach will normally also address:

- 41  
42 (a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;  
43 (b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;  
44 (c) specific information or summaries which require translation;

- 1 (d) contents and formats of notices;
- 2 (e) identification of local Indigenous media which are used by the community;
- 3 (f) a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner;
- 4 (g) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as
- 5 community meetings or First Nation and Métis community information
- 6 centres;
- 7 (h) involvement in the preparation and review of the First Nation and Métis
- 8 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1), including the First
- 9 Nation and Métis values map, and the public availability of First Nation and
- 10 Métis values information;
- 11 (i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect First Nation and Métis
- 12 values; and
- 13 (j) involvement in the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of
- 14 Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).
- 15
- 16

### 17 **3.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach**

18  
19 If a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community is not agreed  
20 upon in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, or if an agreed upon customized consultation  
21 approach has been developed but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use  
22 the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

23  
24 For each notice required in connection with the preparation for a FMP, a direct written  
25 notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and upon request,  
26 in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed  
27 in the local Indigenous media where available.

28  
29 Each time a public information centre is scheduled, the MNRF district manager will contact  
30 each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a  
31 First Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation  
32 and Métis information centre will be provided.

#### 33 34 35 **3.5.1 Forest Management Plans**

36  
37 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part A, Section 2.3 will  
38 apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The  
39 notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional  
40 requirements described in this section.

41  
42  
43

1 3.5.1.1 Consultation

2

3 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

4

5 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.1,  
6 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
7 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

8

- 9 (a) an invitation to identify First Nation or Métis values and participate in the  
10 preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information  
11 Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) and the community demographic profile (Part  
12 A, Section 3.6.2); and  
13 (b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in  
14 the preparation of the report.

15

16

17 Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

18

19 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the  
20 community to participate in the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section  
21 1.2.5.1).

22

23 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to  
24 determine whether there is interest in having a presentation of the proposed long-term  
25 management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section  
26 1.2.5.3). If one or more communities express an interest, a presentation will be offered and  
27 those communities will be invited to attend.

28

29

30 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

31

32 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2,  
33 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
34 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

35

- 36 (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and  
37 Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic  
38 profile,  
39 (b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations  
40 to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will  
41 be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and  
42 Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);

- 1 (c) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in  
2 the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis  
3 values.  
4  
5

6 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations  
7

8 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3,  
9 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
10 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- 11  
12 (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and  
13 Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic  
14 profile;  
15 (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on  
16 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);  
17 and  
18 (c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre, if  
19 such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis  
20 community.  
21

22 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
23 information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.  
24  
25

26 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan  
27

28 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4,  
29 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
30 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- 31  
32 (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on  
33 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;  
34 (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft FMP, which may  
35 include the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part B,  
36 Section 6.1); and  
37 (c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre, if  
38 such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis  
39 community.  
40

41 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
42 information centre to remind the First Nation and Métis community.  
43  
44

1 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

2

3 The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5 will apply, with  
4 modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

5

6

7 **3.6 Documentation**

8

9 During the preparation of a FMP, a number of documents related to First Nation and Métis  
10 community involvement and consultation will be prepared. These documents include a First  
11 Nation and Métis Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified First  
12 Nation and Métis Values and a Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement and  
13 Consultation. The MNRF shall seek advice from each First Nation and Métis community  
14 regarding the public availability of all or part of First Nation and Métis values information in  
15 those documents, having regard to MNRF's legal obligations with respect to the  
16 management of information.

17

18

19 **3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

20

21 MNRF will invite First Nation and Métis communities to identify First Nation and Métis  
22 values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background  
23 Information Report, or review and update the existing First Nation and Métis Background  
24 Information Report. Traditional ecological knowledge, where available and applicable to  
25 forest management, may be a source of information. The First Nation and Métis Background  
26 Information Report will include:

27

- 28 (a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit,  
29 particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting of wood for  
30 domestic purposes, and gathering;
- 31 (b) a summary of forest management-related concerns;
- 32 (c) a summary of the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the  
33 preparation of the report; and
- 34 (d) a First Nation and Métis values map.

35

36 Those values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that  
37 may be affected by forest operations in the management unit will be portrayed on the First  
38 Nation and Métis values map.

39

40 First Nation and Métis Values information includes:

41

- 42 (a) local governance body(s) or reserve(s) in or near the management unit;

- 1 (b) areas used by First Nation and Métis communities, particularly with respect
- 2 to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and
- 3 gathering;
- 4 (c) lands that have been identified as potential reserve lands for social,
- 5 economic or capital development projects, or in connection with land claims
- 6 or litigation;
- 7 (d) sites of First Nation and Métis archaeological, social, cultural, and sacred
- 8 significance, including First Nation and Métis cemeteries and burial sites;
- 9 (e) areas identified by the First Nation and Métis communities during the
- 10 archaeological predictive modelling process as having archaeological
- 11 potential; and
- 12 (f) lands or resources over which the community has made assertions of
- 13 Aboriginal or treaty rights, including assertions of Aboriginal title.
- 14

15 Where assertions are included as part of First Nation and Métis values information or  
16 appear on the First Nation and Métis values map, they will be accompanied by the following  
17 statement: *The inclusion/depiction of this information does not necessarily reflect the*  
18 *position of Ontario regarding the nature or strength of the assertion or constitute any*  
19 *admission or limit Ontario's rights in any way. In particular, the inclusion/depiction of this*  
20 *information does not constitute an admission by Ontario that the assertion engages the*  
21 *Crown's duty to consult or accommodate.*

22

23 Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case  
24 information may not be portrayed on the First Nation and Métis values map(s).

25

26 Having regard to MNRF's legal obligations with respect to the management of information,  
27 MNRF shall seek advice from the First Nation and Métis communities regarding the degree  
28 to which, if at all, First Nation and Métis Values information should be made public.

29

30

### 31 3.6.2 Social and Economic Description

32

33 The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will  
34 include a demographic profile for each First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section  
35 1.1.8.11). The MNRF will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the  
36 community to participate in the preparation and review of the community demographic  
37 profile.

38

39

### 40 3.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values

41

42 The planning team, with the support of the MNRF district manager, will prepare the draft  
43 and final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values. The Report on  
44 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values documents how values identified in

1 the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) that may  
2 be affected by the proposed forest operations in the management unit have been  
3 addressed in the planning of forest operations.

4  
5 In the preparation of the FMP, a draft report will be available at the time of public review of  
6 the proposed operations for the 10-year period (stage three) and will include the following  
7 information:

- 8  
9 (a) a summary of proposed operations;  
10 (b) a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the  
11 First Nation or Métis community;  
12 (c) the most current version of the values map(s) and the First Nation and Métis  
13 values map;  
14 (d) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of  
15 concern associated with identified First Nation and Métis values;  
16 (e) a discussion of how local First Nation and Métis values, including local First  
17 Nation and Métis hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic  
18 purposes, and gathering have been addressed in the planning of forest  
19 operations; and  
20 (f) a comment sheet, and the names of a First Nation and Métis community  
21 contact person and an MNRF contact person.

22  
23 The draft report will be available at the time of public review of the draft FMP (stage four),  
24 and will include:

- 25  
26 (a) the draft FMP summary; and  
27 (b) items (b) through (f) from stage three, including any update(s).

28  
29 The final report will be available at the time of public inspection of the MNRF-approved  
30 forest management plan (stage five), and will include:

- 31  
32 (a) the final forest management plan summary; and  
33 (b) items (b) through (e) from stage three, including any updates from stage  
34 four.

35  
36 During the preparation of an amendment to a FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), the Report on  
37 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest  
38 operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis  
39 values.

40  
41 For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the  
42 preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis  
43 Values (Part C, Section 3.2).

44

1 During the preparation of an AWS (Part D, Section 1.0), the Report on Protection of  
2 Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest operations  
3 proposed in the AWS have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

#### 6 3.6.4 Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement

8 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement in the preparation of the FMP will be  
9 prepared by the MNRF. The summary will include:

- 11 (a) a list of the First Nation and Métis communities, and the primary contact  
12 person for each community;
- 13 (b) a list of the communities' representatives on the planning team and LCC,  
14 where applicable;
- 15 (c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
- 16 (d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
- 17 (e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and a  
18 summary of planning team responses;
- 19 (f) a summary of First Nation and Métis community participation at public  
20 information centres and First Nation and Métis information centres, if such  
21 First Nation and Métis information centres were requested by the  
22 community; and
- 23 (g) a summary of the implementation of the customized consultation approach  
24 for each First Nation and Métis community, where applicable.

26 For those First Nation and Métis communities that agree, the Summary of First Nation and  
27 Métis Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP,  
28 and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the  
29 approved FMP.

31 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared for First Nation and  
32 Métis involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a FMP (Part C,  
33 Sections 8.2 and 8.3), an amendment to the LTMD of a FMP (Part C, Sections 8.4),  
34 preparation of a deemed amendment (Part C, Section 8.5), preparation of a contingency  
35 plan (Part C, Section 8.6), preparation of a FMP extension (Part C, Section 8.7), preparation  
36 of a mid-plan check (Part C, Section 8.8), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).

1

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1		
2		
3	<b>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT .....</b>	<b>6</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions .....	6
5	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>16</b>
6	<b>2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>17</b>
7	2.1 Forest Description .....	17
8	2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition .....	17
9	2.1.2 Current Forest Condition .....	17
10	2.1.3 Forest Classification .....	17
11	2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units.....	17
12	2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes.....	18
13	2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications .....	18
14	2.1.4 Forest Resources .....	18
15	2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk.....	18
16	2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories.....	19
17	2.1.4.3 Values Information.....	19
18	2.2 Social and Economic Description .....	20
19	2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context .....	20
20	2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles .....	21
21	2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest.....	21
22	2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	21
23	<b>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....</b>	<b>22</b>
24	3.1 Introduction .....	22
25	3.2 Management Considerations.....	22
26	3.3 Base Model.....	22
27	3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities .....	22
28	3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance .....	22
29	3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits.....	23
30	3.5 Strategic Management Zones .....	23
31	3.6 Objectives and Indicators.....	23
32	3.7 Long-Term Management Direction.....	24
33	3.7.1 Available Harvest Area .....	25
34	3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest.....	25
35	3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement.....	26
36	3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas .....	26
37	3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment.....	27
38	3.7.6 Risk Assessment .....	27
39	<b>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS .....</b>	<b>28</b>
40	4.1 Introduction .....	28
41	4.2 Prescriptions for Operations.....	28
42	4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern.....	28

1	4.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern Information	
2	Products .....	29
3	4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	29
4	4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	29
5	4.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations.....	30
6	4.3 Harvest Operations.....	30
7	4.3.1 Harvest Areas .....	30
8	4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan.....	31
9	4.3.5 Harvest Volume.....	31
10	4.3.6 Wood Utilization .....	32
11	4.3.7 Salvage .....	32
12	4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume .....	33
13	4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products .....	33
14	4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations.....	33
15	4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas.....	33
16	4.4.2 Renewal Support.....	34
17	4.5 Roads.....	35
18	4.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads.....	35
19	4.5.2 Operational Roads .....	35
20	4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads .....	36
21	4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads.....	36
22	4.5.5 Existing Roads .....	37
23	Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings.....	37
24	4.5.5.1 Road Information Products.....	38
25	4.5.6 Road Water Crossings .....	39
26	4.5.7 Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	39
27	Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	39
28	4.5.7.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products.....	40
29	4.6 Expenditures .....	40
30	4.7 Monitoring and Assessment.....	40
31	4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections .....	40
32	4.7.2 Exceptions .....	41
33	4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration .....	41
34	4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings .....	42
35	4.7.5 Species at Risk.....	42
36	4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness .....	42
37	4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction....	43
38	<b>5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY.....</b>	<b>44</b>
39	<b>6.0 DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>45</b>
40	6.1 Supplementary Documentation .....	45
41	6.2 Other Documentation.....	46
42	<b>7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>47</b>

1   **8.0   FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ..... 48**  
2

**LIST OF TABLES**

1  
2  
3 **FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary..... 49**  
4 **FMP-2: Description of Forest Units ..... 52**  
5 **FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit ..... 54**  
6 **FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules..... 56**  
7 **FMP-5: Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules ..... 59**  
8 **FMP-6: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest ..... 61**  
9 **FMP-7: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ..... 63**  
10 **FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit ..... 65**  
11 **FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product**  
12 **Group..... 67**  
13 **FMP-10: Assessment of Objective Achievement..... 69**  
14 **FMP-11: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads,**  
15 **Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits..... 72**  
16 **FMP-12: Planned Harvest Area ..... 75**  
17 **FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species..... 77**  
18 **FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization ..... 79**  
19 **FMP-15: Projected Wood Utilization by Mill..... 82**  
20 **FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume ..... 85**  
21 **FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations ..... 87**  
22 **FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management ..... 90**  
23 **FMP-19: Planned Expenditures ..... 93**  
24 **FMP-20: Planned Assessment of Establishment ..... 96**  
25

**LIST OF FIGURES**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11

**Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 8**

**Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act ..... 9**

**Figure B-1C: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page..... 10**

**Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions..... 11**

**Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors..... 12**

**Figure B-4: Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that relate to the  
Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument ..... 13**

1 **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT**

2

3 Part B of this manual describes the content requirements and is a template for writing the  
4 forest management plan (FMP). A FMP is comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary  
5 documentation. FMPs will contain page numbers and line numbers.

6

7 During the preparation, review and approval of the FMP, the documentation requirements  
8 of Part B will apply.

9

10 **Phase-in Provisions**

11

12 Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2018 will be prepared in  
13 accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2009).

14

15 Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019, will be prepared in  
16 accordance with the requirements of the following sections of this Forest Management  
17 Planning Manual (FMPM):

18

- 19 • Part B, Section 1.0 through 3.7.6, to the extent reasonably possible; and
- 20 • Part B, Section 4.0 through 8.0.

21 Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2020 due to a  
22 delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest  
23 management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009) and has been  
24 endorsed by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) regional director prior  
25 to April 1, 2019, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the  
26 requirements of the following sections of this FMPM:

27

- 28 • Part B, Section 1.0 through 3.7.6, to the extent reasonably possible; and
- 29 • Part B, Section 4.0 through 8.0.

30 Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for  
31 renewal on or after April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of  
32 Part B of this FMPM.

33

34 Planned operations for the second five-year term of plans prepared in accordance with the  
35 FMPM (2009) will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM  
36 (2009).

37

1 **FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CERTIFICATION AND APPROVAL PAGE**

2  
3 The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-1A) will be  
4 located at the front of each draft and approved FMP. The plan author will complete, sign and  
5 seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final FMP. For FMPs prepared  
6 by an organization other than MNRF, the senior company official of the sustainable forest  
7 licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The final FMP approval page  
8 will also be signed by the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and  
9 the MNRF regional director. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18  
10 Overall Benefit Instrument under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* (ESA), Figure B-1B will be  
11 included in the FMP. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and  
12 submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.  
13

14 If the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager direct other people  
15 with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to  
16 develop parts of a FMP, those people will certify the parts of the FMP that they prepared  
17 and indicate they have prepared those parts of the FMP in accordance with the FMPM. Their  
18 certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1C.  
19

20 A list of exceptions (Figure B-2) will follow the title and certification page. The list of forest  
21 management plan contributors (Figure B-3) will follow the list of exceptions.  
22



1 **Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act**

2  
3 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
4 for the  
5 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

6  
7 [MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization]  
9 for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

10  
11  
12 The Minister (or Minister's delegate) has formed the opinions specified in ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of  
13 the *Endangered Species Act*, 2007 with regard to this forest management plan, which has the  
14 same effect as a permit issued under section 17 of that Act in respect of the following  
15 species:

- 16 • [list]

17  
18  
19  
20  
21 [name] [date]  
22 [Minister (or Minister's delegate)]  
23

1 **Figure B-1C: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page**

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

For Sections of the Forest Management Plan not Prepared by the Plan Author

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the forest management plan as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[position]	[section]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

**Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules that are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern that are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the forest management plan that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

Description of Exception	Specific Section of Forest Management Plan

19

1 **Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors**

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

[name]  
Plan Author

[list]

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

[list]

LOCAL CITIZENS' COMMITTEE MEMBERS

[list]

*A brief statement which reports on the local citizens' committee's agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan (final plan only):*

[statement]

PLAN REVIEWERS

[list]

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. The table of contents will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

**INDEX TO ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT, SECTION 18 OVERALL BENEFIT INSTRUMENT COMPONENTS OF THE FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

The index to Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument components of the FMP (Figure B-4) will be located in the forest management plan on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents. The index will be completed for each species at risk for which the FMP is proposed to be considered a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument. The Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument legislative and policy requirements that are to be addressed by the FMP are listed in the first column. The corresponding section(s) of the FMP where the requirement is addressed will be listed in the second column and the associated page number(s) in the third column.

The sections of the FMP listed in the second column represent examples of sections of a FMP that will address the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit instrument related components. There may be additional sections of a FMP that planning teams may include to address the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit instrument related components.

**Figure B-4: Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that relate to the Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument**

ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components	Section of Forest Management Plan	Page Number
<b>Species</b>		
Description of the proposed activity, methodology and timeline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction</li> <li>▪ 4.0 Planned Operations</li> <li>▪ Figure B-1A Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page</li> </ul>	
Species at risk and/or its habitat is present at or near the proposed activity location and information used to identify these locations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk</li> <li>▪ 2.1.4.3 Values Information</li> </ul>	

ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components	Section of Forest Management Plan	Page Number
How and to what extent the species at risk and/or its habitat may be positively or adversely affected by the proposed activity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction</li> <li>▪ 4.0 Planned Operations</li> <li>▪ 5.0 Determination of Sustainability</li> </ul>	
Description of reasonable alternatives to/within the proposed activity including one that would not adversely affect the species and/or its habitat (avoidance alternative)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction</li> <li>▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations</li> <li>▪ 4.3 Harvest Operations</li> <li>▪ 4.5 Roads</li> </ul>	
Description of how any Government Response Statement published with respect to the species at risk has been considered in the alternative approaches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Figure B-1A Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page</li> <li>▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations</li> </ul>	
Rationale supporting identification of the best alternative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations</li> </ul>	
Description of steps to minimize adverse effects on the species and/or its habitat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations</li> </ul>	
Description of how overall benefit will be achieved for the species within a reasonable time. NOTE: Clearly and appropriately distinguish overall benefit actions from steps that are being taken to minimize adverse effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations</li> </ul>	
Description of the impact monitoring plan for residual adverse effects on the species and/or its habitat, as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment</li> </ul>	

ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components	Section of Forest Management Plan	Page Number
Description of the effectiveness monitoring plan for overall benefit actions, as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment</li> </ul>	

1

1 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

2

3 The introduction will describe the purpose of the FMP and set the context for the FMP  
4 locally, regionally and provincially.

5

6 The FMP text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part  
7 A, Section 1.1.1.1). The FMP text will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest  
8 licensee, and other forest companies that operate on the management unit, and any  
9 management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

10

11 The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description  
12 of any boundary changes since the last FMP was prepared will be documented.

13

14 The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains  
15 the planning team terms of reference.

16

17 The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a  
18 brief description of how MNRF's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the  
19 *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in  
20 the development of the FMP in the form of the SEV consideration document.

21

## 2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION

### 2.1 Forest Description

#### 2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition

The summary of the historic forest condition will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the historic forest condition.

#### 2.1.2 Current Forest Condition

The FMP text will describe the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber, as described in the planning inventory, and discuss the implications of patent land Crown timber and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the FMP. A summary of the land types for the management unit will be provided in FMP-1 that summarizes the status of the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2). The FMP text will reference FMP-1. The FMP text will also discuss the implications of patent land within the management unit on the development of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the analysis package that documents the development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.

#### 2.1.3 Forest Classification

##### 2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units

The FMP text will describe the forest units used in the FMP and how they align with the regional standard forest units (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1). The forest units for the management unit will be identified in FMP-2. The FMP text will reference FMP-2. The FMP text will also describe how the forest units provide the ability to assess the requirements of the forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale. If applicable, the FMP text will describe how analysis units were used. The FMP text will reference the analysis package.

A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by forest unit and age class will be provided in FMP-3. The production forest area that is available for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The FMP text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The FMP text will describe the

1 management implications of the plan start area by forest unit and age class, on the  
2 development of the FMP.

3  
4

#### 5 2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes

6

7 The FMP text will describe the forest landscape classes and the plan start forest  
8 composition, structure and pattern (e.g., figures and/or graphs) at the landscape level (Part  
9 A, Section 1.2.2.3). The forest landscape pattern will be portrayed. The text will reference  
10 the information product (e.g., map). The FMP text will describe the management  
11 implications of the plan start forest landscape pattern on the development of the FMP.

12  
13

#### 14 2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications

15

16 The FMP text will describe the other forest classifications (e.g., habitat for wildlife species)  
17 used in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The FMP text will also describe any management  
18 implications concerning the other forest classifications on the development of the FMP.

19

20 Where applicable, a summary of the habitat for selected species on the management unit  
21 will be provided in FMP-7. The FMP text will reference FMP-7.

22

23 Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of  
24 selected species will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

25

26 The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start habitat on the  
27 development of the FMP.

28

29

#### 30 2.1.4 Forest Resources

31

##### 32 2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

33

34 Species at risk on the management unit will be identified. If applicable, the FMP text will  
35 describe classifications used to identify habitat for forest-related species at risk. The  
36 contribution and importance of the management unit in supporting these classified forest  
37 dependent species of flora, fish and wildlife will be described. Where other resource  
38 management plans (e.g., recovery strategies and management plans for species at risk) or  
39 inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat,  
40 and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described.  
41 The degree to which the quality or quantity of habitat for species at risk could be affected by  
42 forest management operations will be discussed.

43

1 Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of  
2 forest-related species at risk will be included. The text will reference the information product  
3 (e.g., map).

4  
5 The FMP text will describe the implications of species at risk species on the development of  
6 the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.8.7).

7  
8  
9 2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories

10  
11 The FMP text will describe the other (not species at risk or selected species) fish and wildlife  
12 resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the  
13 occurrence of fish and wildlife species based on fish and wildlife inventory and habitat  
14 information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.6). The degree to which the quality or quantity of these  
15 resources could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

16  
17 The FMP text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the  
18 development of the FMP.

19  
20  
21 2.1.4.3 Values Information

22  
23 The FMP text will identify and briefly describe the values information portrayed on the  
24 values maps (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and how it was used in the preparation of the FMP.  
25 The text will include a list of sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise  
26 available in the values database and identification of those subjects for which data is  
27 recognized as being incomplete or missing.

28  
29 The FMP text will also describe the management implications of values on the development  
30 of the FMP. The values maps will be included in the FMP. The text will describe how the  
31 information is organized on the values maps (e.g., one map, series of maps).

32  
33 For resource-based tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities,  
34 the FMP text will provide a brief description of the information portrayed on the values  
35 maps. Not all old growth red and white pine forest communities will be managed for old  
36 growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such community will not be managed  
37 for old growth values will be provided in the text of the FMP.

38  
39 The FMP text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.8)  
40 and their implications on the FMP. The land uses include:

- 41  
42 (a) resource-based tourism areas;  
43 (b) mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;  
44 (c) Crown land recreation and cottaging;

- 1 (d) trapping (commercial fur); and
- 2 (e) private land.

3

4 The FMP text will describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, national parks and  
5 forest reserves within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the  
6 achievement of management objectives. This description will include a list of national and  
7 provincial parks, conservation reserves, forest reserves, and the management emphasis for  
8 each protected area and the class of provincial park. In addition, the FMP text will describe  
9 any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the  
10 vicinity of these areas.

11

12 The FMP text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the  
13 Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have  
14 implications for forest management activities on the management unit. The FMP text will  
15 describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within  
16 these areas.

17

18 The FMP text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g.,  
19 significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) that occur on the management unit.  
20 The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be,  
21 affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

22

23 The FMP text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section  
24 1.1.8.10). For example, the text will describe areas that are currently accessed, roadless  
25 areas and areas where land use decisions have restricted access. The FMP text will describe  
26 the implications of the plan start access condition on the development of the FMP.

27

28 The FMP text will include a statement confirming the commitment of part of the FMP to  
29 maintain the viability of the tourism industry by protecting tourism values in the forest  
30 management planning process through the application of MNRF's approved forest  
31 management guide(s) that addresses forestry and resource-based tourism and the use of  
32 RSA's as one method of protecting and sustaining these values.

33

34

## 35 **2.2 Social and Economic Description**

36

### 37 **2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context**

38

39 The FMP text will list communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g.,  
40 employment, municipal taxes) related to forest management activities, and First Nation and  
41 Métis communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional  
42 uses may be affected by forest management activities.

43

44

1 2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

2  
3 The standardized demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section  
4 2.2.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include:

- 5  
6 (a) population trends for each community;  
7 (b) community diversity for each community;  
8 (c) household income for each community; and  
9 (d) employment by industry for each community.

10  
11 The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities. The FMP  
12 text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
13 complete profiles.

14  
15  
16 2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

17  
18 The FMP text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest  
19 organized by sector. The sectors include:

- 20  
21 (a) forestry;  
22 (b) recreation and tourism;  
23 (c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and  
24 (d) any others.

25  
26 The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains  
27 the complete description of industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest.

28  
29  
30 **2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

31  
32 If agreed to by the First Nation or Métis community, the First Nation and Métis Background  
33 Information Report will be included in the FMP as follows. The FMP text will summarize the  
34 use of the lands, and natural resources on the management unit by First Nation and Métis  
35 communities and forest management-related opportunities, concerns, and issues for those  
36 communities. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section  
37 3.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The text will  
38 reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete  
39 report.

1 **3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

2  
3 **3.1 Introduction**

4  
5 The FMP text will outline the components of the long-term management direction (LTMD).

6  
7 Additional documentation requirements associated with the LTMD for Far North  
8 management units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part  
9 F of this FMPM.

10  
11  
12 **3.2 Management Considerations**

13  
14 The FMP text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations  
15 affected the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

16  
17 The FMP text will summarize the information used to identify the management  
18 considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm  
19 or change past management direction. The modified fire response areas, if any, will be  
20 identified and portrayed.

21  
22  
23 **3.3 Base Model**

24  
25 The FMP text will identify that the assumptions used to develop the base model inventory  
26 and base model related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest  
27 dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological  
28 limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team are included in the  
29 analysis package. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that  
30 provides the details of the development of the base model inventory and the base model.

31  
32  
33 **3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities**

34  
35 The FMP text will describe how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3)  
36 conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the growth  
37 and yield projections (Part A, Section 1.2.4.1), and silvicultural options (Part A, Section  
38 1.2.4.5).

39  
40  
41 **3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance**

42  
43 The FMP text will describe the analysis of past silvicultural performance conducted by a  
44 registered professional forester and how the results of the analysis influenced the

1 development of the post-harvest renewal transition rules (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The post-  
2 harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in (FMP-5). The FMP text will reference  
3 FMP-5.

4  
5 The FMP text will document any post-harvest renewal transition rules that are not consistent  
6 with the results of the analysis of past silvicultural performance. The rationale for  
7 adjustments to the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be also be documented.  
8 If applicable, the FMP text will describe the monitoring program to be used to verify the  
9 assumptions used to rationalize the adjustments and will include:

- 10  
11 (a) methodologies;  
12 (b) timing and duration; and  
13 (c) documentation and reporting.  
14  
15

### 16 **3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits**

17  
18 The FMP text will describe the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting. The FMP  
19 text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting  
20 (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) influenced the development of objectives, indicators and desired  
21 levels for the management unit. The summary of public consultation will summarize  
22 participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting.  
23  
24

### 25 **3.5 Strategic Management Zones**

26  
27 The FMP text will describe the following for management zones (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1):  
28

- 29 (a) the intent of the management zones; and  
30 (b) how the management zone was incorporated into the development of  
31 objectives and indicators.  
32

33 Management zones will be portrayed.  
34  
35

### 36 **3.6 Objectives and Indicators**

37  
38 The FMP text will describe the management objectives, indicators and the time when each  
39 indicator is to be assessed. The FMP text will document the desirable levels and targets for  
40 each indicator. The management objectives, indicators desirable levels and targets, and the  
41 timing of assessment are summarized in FMP-10. The FMP text will reference FMP-10.  
42 Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other  
43 plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives

1 will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be  
2 identified.

3

4 The FMP text will also document how desirable levels and targets were established, in  
5 consideration of background information, including direction in relevant forest management  
6 guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting, and  
7 the results of scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The FMP text will reference the  
8 section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the development  
9 of management objectives and scoping investigations.

10

11

### 12 **3.7 Long-Term Management Direction**

13

14 The FMP text will describe the strategic modelling (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) conducted to  
15 determine the location, types, and levels of activities (i.e., access, harvest, renewal and  
16 tending) required to manage forest cover to balance the achievement of management  
17 objectives. The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification  
18 of areas eligible for harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The locations, types, and levels of  
19 activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management  
20 objectives investigated during the development of the LTMD will be described. The FMP text  
21 will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the  
22 development of the LTMD.

23

24 The FMP text will contain a description of the projected forest condition from the strategic  
25 modelling. The applicable 100-year projections for quantifiable objectives will be  
26 documented in the FMP. The projections in the FMP include:

27

- 28 (a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-6);
- 29 (b) habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-7);
- 30 (c) available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-8); and
- 31 (d) available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group  
32 (FMP-9).

33

34 The FMP text will describe the change in forest condition from plan start through the 100-  
35 year projections, and any implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit  
36 (FMP-6). The projected area of each forest unit (FMP-6) will be portrayed graphically in the  
37 FMP. The FMP text will reference FMP-6.

38

39 The FMP text will describe the change in habitat for selected wildlife species from plan start  
40 through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change (FMP-7). The  
41 projected area of habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-7) will be portrayed graphically in  
42 the FMP. The FMP text will reference FMP-7.

43

1 The FMP text will describe the change in available harvest volume by species group, and  
2 broad size or product group from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any  
3 implications of the projected change (FMP-9). The FMP text will reference FMP-9. The  
4 projected level of available harvest volume (FMP-9) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP.  
5 The volume graph will also present:

- 6
- 7 (a) projections from the previous FMPs;
- 8 (b) historic wood utilization; and
- 9 (c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified  
10 in the Provincial Wood Supply Strategy.
- 11

12 The outputs of forest modelling will be submitted with the FMP in digital form. The decisions  
13 made in the development of the strategic model will be documented in the analysis package.  
14 The text will reference the sections of the analysis package that contain the decisions made.  
15

16 The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in Appendix I.  
17  
18

#### 19 3.7.1 Available Harvest Area

20

21 The FMP text will describe the projected levels of available harvest area for each forest unit  
22 (FMP-8), and the spatial distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40  
23 years). The FMP text will discuss any associated management implications (Part A, Section  
24 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also describe the trends in available harvest area from previous  
25 FMP, the current plan, and projected available harvest area (FMP-8), and the implications of  
26 the projected change. The FMP text will reference FMP-8. The projected level of available  
27 harvest area (FMP-8) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP.  
28

29 The spatial distribution over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) will be portrayed.  
30  
31

#### 32 3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest

33

34 The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the selection of areas for  
35 harvest, for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). Areas selected for harvest for the  
36 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit. The text will  
37 document how the criteria reflect upon the strategic modelling, and discuss the relative  
38 importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the areas for harvest.  
39

40 If planned harvest areas do not closely match projections of forest operations in the LTMD,  
41 in terms of management zone, age class and/or stage of management, the rationale will be  
42 documented in the FMP text.  
43

1 The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period and the optional harvest areas will be  
2 identified.

3  
4 The FMP text will include a discussion describing how MNR's forest management guide(s)  
5 were considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations. The text will describe  
6 how the areas selected for harvest contribute to the achievement of the targets and  
7 objectives for landscape pattern. Rationale for harvest areas selected for the 10-year period  
8 that do not contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape  
9 pattern will be provided.

10  
11 The FMP text will describe any factors that limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as  
12 unresolved issues over forest resource use, habitat for species at risk, and the effects of  
13 these limitations on the achievement of forest management objectives.

14  
15 The text will document input from the public and First Nation and Métis communities that  
16 influenced the selection of areas for harvest.

17  
18

### 19 3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

20  
21 For all management objectives (i.e., spatial and nonspatial) and indicators scheduled for  
22 assessment during the preparation and approval of the FMP (FMP-10), the FMP text will  
23 document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).  
24 The levels of objective achievement and their relationship to desirable levels and targets,  
25 including any differences, will also be documented. If the level of objective achievement is  
26 outside the desirable level for an objective, rationale will be provided. The results of analysis  
27 to investigate the balancing of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be described in the  
28 text. A summary of the projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets in the  
29 LTMD will be recorded in FMP-10. The FMP text will reference FMP-10.

30  
31 The FMP text will describe how objectives and indicators to be assessed during FMP  
32 implementation will be assessed. The FMP text will also describe how scheduled forest  
33 management activities related to these objectives and indicators will contribute to overall  
34 objective achievement.

35  
36

### 37 3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas

38  
39 The FMP text will document the methods and criteria used to assess the feasibility of the  
40 spatial distribution of the harvest and the economic feasibility of the harvest (Part A, Section  
41 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will describe how the distribution of harvest areas over the first four  
42 FMP periods provides for a spatially and economically feasible harvest. The text will discuss  
43 any implications of the spatial distribution of harvest areas on the FMP being prepared and  
44 future FMP.

1 3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment

2

3 The FMP text will document the methodology used to assess the social and economic  
4 impacts of implementing the LTMD. The FMP text will describe the expected social and  
5 economic impacts of implementing the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also  
6 describe how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and  
7 the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities identified in the  
8 social and economic description (Part B, Section 2.2).

9

10

11 3.7.6 Risk Assessment

12

13 The FMP text will describe the risks assessed in the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).  
14 The FMP text will also document the potential implications on the achievement of  
15 management objectives (e.g., wildlife habitat, available volume), as determined through the  
16 risk assessment investigation(s).

17

1 **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS**

2  
3 **4.1 Introduction**

4  
5 The FMP text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will  
6 describe the areas planned for operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3).

7  
8 Additional documentation requirements for Far North management units that are added to  
9 the AOU concerning the planned operations are described in Part F of this FMPM.

10  
11  
12 **4.2 Prescriptions for Operations**

13  
14 4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

15  
16 The operational prescriptions and conditions for all areas of concern that were developed in  
17 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3, will be documented in FMP-11. The  
18 FMP text will reference FMP-11 and describe the contents of the table.

19  
20 For areas of concern prescriptions and conditions that required the completion of  
21 supplementary documentation, the text will reference the section of the supplementary  
22 documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the  
23 public and First Nation and Métis communities. Any objections to an operational  
24 prescription or condition for an area of concern as a result of public or First Nation or Métis  
25 community comments will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses  
26 to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation. The  
27 format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix IV.

28  
29 Any operational prescription or condition for an area of concern that differs from the specific  
30 direction or recommendation (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be  
31 identified in FMP-11 as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section  
32 4.7.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the  
33 operational prescription or condition. The exception monitoring program will also be  
34 identified in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV). The list of exceptions will be  
35 referenced in the MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s  
36 certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval (Figure B-2).

37  
38 Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under  
39 the ESA reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the  
40 species, will be considered and will be documented in the text.

41  
42  
43

1 4.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern Information Products

2  
3 The information product associated with operational prescriptions and conditions for areas  
4 of concern will identify:

- 5  
6 (a) the area of concern identifier; and  
7 (b) the area of concern type.

8  
9 For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A,  
10 Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the  
11 current approved FMP may be used, and will be documented in FMP-11, and identified in  
12 the information product. If desired, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of  
13 concern from the new FMP may be used for candidate bridging areas and second-pass  
14 harvest areas and will be documented in FMP-11, and identified in the information product.  
15

16  
17 4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

18  
19 4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules

20  
21 Silvicultural ground rules (SGRs) that were developed for the applicable forest units - ecosite  
22 combinations on the management unit are documented in FMP-4 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).  
23

24 The FMP text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and  
25 tending presented in FMP-4 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally  
26 depleted areas that are salvaged, for the 10-year period of the FMP.  
27

28 The FMP text will include a discussion of how the SGRs reflect the silvicultural options in the  
29 base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The FMP text will also include a discussion of how the  
30 analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional  
31 forester influenced the development of the SGRs.  
32

33 The FMP text will describe the SGRs that will most commonly be used to regenerate each  
34 silvicultural stratum. The FMP text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in  
35 each SGR will be the most likely treatment. The FMP text will also contain a statement that  
36 this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of FMP  
37 preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural  
38 treatments in the SGRs at the time of implementation of operations.  
39

40 If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s) is included in a  
41 SGR, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in FMP-4. The rationale for that  
42 exception will be provided. The FMP text will reference the monitoring program that  
43 describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment  
44 (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

1 If a silvicultural trial area is planned for implementation, the trial areas will be planned and  
2 implemented using the approved silvicultural guide(s). The rationale for the trial will be  
3 included in the FMP text and will identify the SGR to be used. The SGR for the trial area will  
4 be documented in FMP-4.

5  
6 The FMP text will state that the information products for harvest, renewal and tending  
7 operations will serve as the stand list.

8  
9 The FMP text will describe situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of  
10 herbicide may occur.

11  
12  
13 **4.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations**

14  
15 Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of MNRF's  
16 forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales  
17 or relating to species at risk, these conditions will be documented in the FMP. Where  
18 conditions on regular operations apply to a specific management zone, the text will identify  
19 the management zone and where it is portrayed.

20  
21 Any conditions on regular operations for an important ecological feature that differ from the  
22 specific direction or recommendation (standards or guidelines) in a forest management  
23 guide will be identified in the FMP as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part  
24 B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of  
25 the condition on regular operations. The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNRF  
26 district manager's and MNRF regional resources manager's certification and  
27 recommendation of the FMP for approval (Figure B-2).

28  
29 Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under  
30 the ESA reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the  
31 species, will be considered and will be documented in the text.

32  
33 **4.3 Harvest Operations**

34  
35 **4.3.1 Harvest Areas**

36  
37 The areas planned for harvest operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are  
38 described in Part B, Section 3.7.2. The 10-year area is the planned harvest area. The available  
39 harvest area and the planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be described in the  
40 text and recorded in FMP-12. The FMP text will reference FMP-12. The text will discuss how  
41 the applicable MNRF guide(s) (e.g., guide that addresses the conservation of biodiversity at  
42 the stand and site scales) were considered in the planning of harvest operations.

43

1 If applicable, the FMP text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by  
2 licensee and record it in FMP-14. The FMP text will reference FMP-14. The FMP text will  
3 include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan does not represent an  
4 agreement to make harvest areas available to a particular licensee.

5  
6 For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of  
7 stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNR's  
8 applicable forest management guide(s). The required area of stand-level residual will be  
9 identified and portrayed in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest  
10 management guide(s). Rationale will be provided in the text of the FMP for those instances  
11 when harvest areas do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the  
12 applicable forest management guide(s).

13  
14 For harvest related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

- 15  
16 (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);  
17 (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and  
18 (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

19  
20 If area is identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D,  
21 Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text  
22 will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

23  
24 The FMP text will include a statement that locations where fuelwood can be obtained will be  
25 identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.3.1).

#### 26 27 28 4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

29  
30 The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest  
31 operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The FMP text will contain a description of  
32 the area of bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also include an  
33 acknowledgement that the bridging operations are limited to three months of harvest area,  
34 and harvest of bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the FMP.

35  
36 The FMP text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an  
37 estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing  
38 and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

#### 39 40 41 4.3.5 Harvest Volume

42  
43 The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the planned harvest volume, for the 10-  
44 year period, will be recorded in FMP-13. Volumes will be summarized by net merchantable

1 volume, and undersized and defect volume. The method used to estimate the volume for  
2 the planned harvest area will be described in the FMP text. If there are any substantial  
3 differences between the available harvest volume and the planned harvest volume, by  
4 conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

#### 7 4.3.6 Wood Utilization

8  
9 The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest  
10 volume for the 10-year period. The planned harvest volume will be recorded by utilization,  
11 volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in  
12 FMP-14. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the  
13 harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. Any volumes  
14 that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit  
15 will be identified as unutilized harvest volume. The text will also include a discussion of the  
16 sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes. Anticipated effects on the achievement of  
17 management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the projected  
18 unutilized volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text. The plan text will contain  
19 a statement that projected unutilized harvest volumes remain available for utilization to  
20 support industrial proposals. The FMP text will reference FMP-14.

21  
22 The planned harvest volume for each mill projected to receive wood supply from the  
23 management unit will be recorded, by volume type, product, and species in FMP-15.

24  
25 The FMP text will describe the industrial wood requirements for the 10-year period. The  
26 FMP text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNRF wood supply commitment  
27 levels were achieved and the implications (e.g., objective achievement) if they are not  
28 achieved. The FMP text will reference FMP-15. If volume is projected to be utilized but it is  
29 not possible to forecast a specific mill, the FMP text will include a discussion of the potential  
30 markets.

31  
32 The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the FMP is not an agreement to  
33 make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to make planned  
34 harvest volume available to a particular mill.

#### 37 4.3.7 Salvage

38  
39 The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section  
40 1.3.3.1. The FMP text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of  
41 salvage harvest operations. The salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each  
42 licensee or group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-14. Areas of salvage harvest will be  
43 included in the harvest area information products. The FMP text will reference FMP-14.

1 4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

2  
3 The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described  
4 in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The FMP text will briefly describe the purpose and function of  
5 contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified. The  
6 contingency area and an estimate of the volume will be recorded in FMP-16. The FMP text  
7 will reference FMP-16.

8  
9 The contingency area will be included in the harvest area information products.

10  
11  
12 4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products

13  
14 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

- 15  
16 (a) the harvest block identifier;  
17 (b) the silvicultural system;  
18 (c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage,  
19 contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);  
20 (d) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;  
21 (e) the SGR; and  
22 (f) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

23  
24 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

- 25  
26 (a) the harvest block identifier;  
27 (b) the silvicultural system;  
28 (c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage,  
29 contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);  
30 (d) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;  
31 (e) the SGR; and  
32 (f) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

33  
34  
35 **4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations**

36  
37 4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

38  
39 The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A,  
40 Section 1.3.3.3. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with  
41 harvest and natural disturbance will be summarized by treatment in FMP-17. The FMP text  
42 will reference FMP-17.

1 The FMP text will include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E,  
2 Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types  
3 and levels of renewal and tending operations. The FMP text will also describe the planned  
4 levels of renewal and tending operations and associated expenditures required to achieve  
5 objectives described in the FMP. The FMP text will describe supplemental treatments or  
6 retreatments, if applicable.

7  
8 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and  
9 protection will be submitted with the AWS (Part D, Section 3.3.2).

10

11 For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two  
12 passes. The FMP text will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will  
13 achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

14

15 For renewal and tending related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

16

- 17 (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
- 18 (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
- 19 (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

20

21

#### 22 4.4.2 Renewal Support

23

24 The sustainable forest licensee’s program for the collection of seed and the production of  
25 nursery stock, during the 10-year period will be described in the FMP text. A forecast of the  
26 volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by  
27 species), for the 10-year period will also be documented in the FMP text.

28

29 Tree improvement activities scheduled during the 10-year period to support the production  
30 of improved seed will be described in the FMP text, with reference to existing seed orchards  
31 and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be  
32 portrayed.

33

34 Information products associated with tree improvement activities will identify:

35

- 36 (a) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern; and
- 37 (b) the tree improvement activity.

38

39 Information products associated with tree improvement activities portray:

40

- 41 (a) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern; and
- 42 (b) the tree improvement activity.

43

44

1   **4.5    Roads**

2

3    4.5.1   Primary and Branch Roads

4

5    A summary of primary and branch road construction will be documented in the FMP text.  
6    Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new  
7    primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use  
8    management strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated  
9    use management strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP  
10   (Appendix III). The FMP text will reference the supplemental documentation (Appendix III).

11

12   If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a  
13   provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

14

15   The FMP text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restriction and/or  
16   road transfer implemented during the 10-year period. If a use management strategy restricts  
17   public access, the FMP text will reference the supplementary documentation that contains  
18   the rationale for the restriction (Appendix III).

19

20   Each planned new primary and branch road and the use management strategy for the road  
21   will be recorded in FMP-18. The length of road to be constructed during the 10-year period  
22   of the FMP will also be recorded in FMP-18. The FMP text will reference FMP-18.

23

24   Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for  
25   a value, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNRF's  
26   guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
27   documented in the FMP.

28

29

30    4.5.2   Operational Roads

31

32   A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP  
33   text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they  
34   are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often decommissioned.  
35   Each operational road boundary, within which an operational road will be constructed, and  
36   the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in FMP-18. The  
37   FMP text will reference FMP-18. Documentation of the use management strategy for each  
38   operational road or networks of operational roads will be included in the supplementary  
39   documentation of the FMP (Appendix III). If the use management strategy restricts public  
40   access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided in the supplementary  
41   documentation (Appendix III). The FMP text will reference the appropriate sections of the  
42   supplementary documentation of the FMP.

43

1 If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial  
2 park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

3  
4 Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value,  
5 any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNR's guide(s) (e.g.,  
6 guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in  
7 the FMP.

#### 10 4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

11  
12 The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern.  
13 For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary or branch road corridor, the  
14 conditions on construction of the road will be documented in FMP-11 and where practical,  
15 portrayed on the operations maps. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will  
16 also be documented in FMP-11. If public comments have been received concerning a  
17 crossing of an area of concern by a primary or branch road, the receipt of comments will be  
18 noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part  
19 D). The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the  
20 plan that contains the documentation.

21  
22 The FMP text will include a statement that for each new primary or branch road water  
23 crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction  
24 will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance  
25 with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol  
26 for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

#### 29 4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads

30  
31 The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern.  
32 For operational road crossings of areas of concern, the conditions on construction of the  
33 crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be documented  
34 in FMP-11 and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. Conditions on a landing  
35 within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-11. If public comments have been  
36 received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of  
37 public comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary  
38 documentation (Appendix IV, Part C). The FMP text will reference the sections of the  
39 supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the documentation.

40  
41 The FMP text will include a statement that for each new operational road water crossing to  
42 be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be  
43 finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with

1 the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for  
2 the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

3  
4  
5 4.5.5 Existing Roads

6  
7 Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
8 licensee as described in Part A<sup>1</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used  
9 for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>2</sup>,  
10 will be documented in FMP-18. The associated use management strategy for each existing  
11 road or road network will also be documented in FMP-18. Documentation of new or revised  
12 use management strategies, and the rationale, will be included in the supplementary  
13 documentation of the FMP (Appendix III).

14  
15 Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated intent to transfer responsibility for an  
16 existing road during the next 20 years (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7), a preliminary indication of  
17 the management intent for the road or road network will be documented in FMP-18. If the  
18 sustainable forest licensee plans to transfer the responsibility for a road during this 10-year  
19 period, the actions required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings,  
20 will be documented in FMP-18.

21  
22 The FMP text will reference the information on existing road use management strategies  
23 including the transfer of road responsibility and decommissioning in FMP-18.

24  
25  
26 Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

27  
28 If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
29 during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern for  
30 a value, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's  
31 guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
32 documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

33  
34 If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
35 during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area  
36 of concern for a value, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's

---

<sup>1</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>2</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

1 guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
2 documented in the FMP.

3  
4

#### 5 4.5.5.1 Road Information Products

6

7 For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
8 licensee as described in Part A<sup>3</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used  
9 for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>4</sup>,  
10 information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access  
11 controls and decommissioning will identify:

12

- 13 (a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years);
- 14 (b) the corridors for primary and branch roads planned for construction (10  
15 years);
- 16 (c) the operational road boundaries (10 years);
- 17 (d) the areas of concern within the corridors for primary and branch roads,  
18 operational road boundaries, and the areas of concern that intersect existing  
19 roads;
- 20 (e) the roads that will be maintained;
- 21 (f) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
- 22 (g) the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments  
23 of roads where new access controls are scheduled, and the type of access  
24 control activities; and
- 25 (h) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of  
26 decommissioning activities.

27

28 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction,  
29 maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

30

- 31 (a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years)
- 32 (b) the corridors for primary and branch roads (10 years);
- 33 (c) the operational road boundaries (10 years);
- 34 (d) the areas of concern within the corridors for primary and branch roads,  
35 operational road boundaries, and the areas of concern that intersect existing  
36 roads;

---

<sup>3</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>4</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

- 1 (e) the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments  
2 of roads where new access controls are scheduled; and  
3 (f) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned.  
4  
5

6 4.5.6 Road Water Crossings  
7

8 The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural  
9 Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval  
10 of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP.  
11

12 4.5.7 Forestry Aggregate Pits  
13

14 The FMP text will include a statement that the criteria for a forestry aggregate pit apply as  
15 per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this FMPM.  
16

17 The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate  
18 pits, as described in Appendix V, will be documented in the FMP.  
19

20 Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this  
21 FMPM.  
22  
23

24 Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits  
25

26 The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF's  
27 guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be  
28 documented in the FMP.  
29

30 If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, the appropriate conditions on  
31 operations, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at  
32 the stand and site scales), will be documented in FMP-11 and where practical, portrayed on  
33 the operations maps.  
34

35 If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
36 during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an  
37 area of concern, any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in MNRF's guide(s)  
38 (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be  
39 documented in the FMP.  
40

41 All existing forestry aggregate pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D,  
42 Section 3.3.4).  
43  
44

1 4.5.7.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products

2

3 Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will identify:

4

5 (a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and

6 (b) the areas of concern.

7

8 Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will portray:

9

10 (a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and

11 (b) the areas of concern

12

13

14 **4.6 Expenditures**

15

16 The FMP text will identify the projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance  
17 operations, and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section  
18 1.3.7). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate  
19 expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations.

20

21 The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-19.  
22 The FMP text will reference FMP-19.

23

24

25 **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

26

27 4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

28

29 The sustainable forest licensee’s 10-year compliance strategy will be developed in  
30 accordance with the requirements of MNRF’s Forest Compliance Handbook. The handbook  
31 describes the forest operations inspection process, the requirement for the sustainable  
32 forest licensee to produce inspection reports, and the processes for managing operational  
33 issues that may be identified through compliance inspections. The 10-year compliance  
34 strategy will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections,  
35 particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest  
36 operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the  
37 submission of inspection reports to MNRF. The 10-year compliance strategy will be included  
38 in the FMP text.

39

40 The FMP text will describe the MNRF district program for auditing forest operations and  
41 conducting forest operations inspections. The FMP text will also describe how compliance  
42 performance on the forest will be communicated to the local citizens’ committee (LCC) for  
43 their review.

44

1 4.7.2 Exceptions

2  
3 The FMP text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the  
4 management unit. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the  
5 supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

6  
7 The monitoring programs for exceptions will include:

- 8  
9 (a) methodologies;  
10 (b) timing and duration;  
11 (c) documentation and reporting; and  
12 (d) the opportunities for LCC participation.  
13  
14

15 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

16  
17 The FMP text will summarize the monitoring program to assess regeneration for naturally  
18 and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess areas  
19 managed under the selection silvicultural system. The monitoring program will assess  
20 establishment and performance of regeneration for harvested areas including salvage.  
21

22 The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement  
23 of regeneration standards contained in the SGRs. The Forest Operations and Silvicultural  
24 Manual provides direction regarding the standards for observation to assess regeneration.  
25

26 A summary of the area planned to be assessed for establishment will be provided in FMP-20.  
27 The FMP text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be assessed during the 10-  
28 year period. The FMP text will reference FMP-20.  
29

30 The full monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the  
31 FMP, and referenced in the FMP text.  
32

33 The monitoring program for establishment will identify the following:

- 34  
35 (a) assessment methodologies;  
36 (b) validation methodologies;  
37 (c) timing for assessments;  
38 (d) timing for validation;  
39 (e) documentation, including the process to address areas not successfully  
40 established, and reporting; and  
41 (f) the opportunities for LCC participation.  
42  
43

1 The monitoring program for performance will identify the following:

2

- 3 (a) assessment methodologies;
- 4 (b) timing for assessments;
- 5 (c) documentation and reporting; and
- 6 (d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

7

8

#### 9 4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings

10

11 A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out  
12 during the 10-year period will be provided in the FMP text. The description will include the  
13 methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to  
14 determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for  
15 each road or road network will be recorded in FMP-18.

16

17

#### 18 4.7.5 Species at Risk

19

20 If applicable, the FMP text will summarize the monitoring program developed for a species  
21 at risk. The monitoring program will include impact and effectiveness monitoring of the  
22 prescriptions, conditions, or overall benefit actions applicable to the species. The full  
23 monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary  
24 documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

25

26 The monitoring program will include:

27

- 28 (a) methodologies;
- 29 (b) timing and duration;
- 30 (c) documentation and reporting; and
- 31 (d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

32

33

### 34 **4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness**

35

36 The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the 10-  
37 year period of the FMP will be described in the text, and will apply to the entire  
38 management unit. These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will  
39 prevent the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to take immediate  
40 action to suppress small fires. These measures will include any business practices and  
41 guidelines for modifying industrial operations developed for fire prevention, preparedness,  
42 and suppression purposes. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in  
43 the planning of fire prevention and preparedness.

44

1 The text of the section will include:

2

- 3 (a) a description of how sustainable forest licensees will promote fire prevention  
4 (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring  
5 compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of  
6 how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;  
7 (b) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention  
8 plans and initiatives; and  
9 (c) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire  
10 suppression, to be considered “trained and capable”.

11

12

13 **4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction**

14

15 The FMP text will document the assessment of the expected effect of planned types and  
16 levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the spatial distribution of harvest  
17 areas on the progress towards meeting the objectives in the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

18 The assessment will:

19

- 20 (a) compare the planned harvest, renewal and tending operations to the  
21 projections in the LTMD;  
22 (b) compare the distribution of harvest to the projections in the LTMD;  
23 (c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the  
24 planned harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;  
25 (d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest  
26 volume of the planned harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and  
27 (e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on  
28 the achievement of the LTMD.

29

30 If planned types, levels and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections in  
31 the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be  
32 provided.

1 **5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY**

2

3 The FMP text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as  
4 to how the FMP has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic  
5 values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The  
6 conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement, the spatial  
7 assessments, the social and economic assessment, the risk assessment (Part A, Section  
8 1.2.5.2), prescriptions and conditions for the protection of values, and conditions on regular  
9 operations for the protection of important ecological features.

10

11 The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

12

13 (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on  
14 the management unit and discuss:

15 (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide  
16 rationale for any management objectives for which targets and/or  
17 desirable levels are not achieved;

18 (ii) the spatial assessments;

19 (iii) the social and economic assessment; and

20 (iv) the risk assessment.

21 (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the  
22 Crown forest.

23

## 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The FMP will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made during the planning process. In addition, it will include documentation of information which, because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the FMP.

Additional supplementary documentation requirements for Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPPM.

### 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the FMP includes:

- (a) The summary of the historic forest condition (Part A, Section 1.1.8.12);
- (b) the analysis package that describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.1.7);
- (c) the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (d) the updated summary of First Nation and Métis involvement (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.4);
- (e) the social and economic description and demographic profiles (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11);
- (f) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
- (g) the monitoring programs for species at risk (Part B, Section 4.7.5);
- (h) the monitoring program for success of silvicultural activities (Part B, Section 4.7.3)
- (i) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.2), and the locations of primary and branch roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
- (j) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1) on operational roads (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4);
- (k) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan (in the event of a request for an individual environmental assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNRF to the Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC)) that includes:
  - i a summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;
  - ii a summary of issue resolution (e.g., type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and

- 1                   iii       a summary of each stage of consultation including the desired forest
- 2                               and benefits meeting (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types
- 3                               of supplemental notices sent);
- 4           (l)       a report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation;
- 5                   the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the
- 6                   effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change,
- 7                   if any (Part A, Section 2.2.6);
- 8           (m)       the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.5.2) and a list of major
- 9                   changes from the draft to final FMP;
- 10           (n)       the planning team’s terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1); and
- 11           (o)       Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B,
- 12                   Section 1.0).

13

14 The draft FMP will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft  
15 plan submission. The approved FMP will include all of the supplementary documentation.

16

17

## 18 **6.2 Other Documentation**

19

20 The public correspondence related to the development of the FMP will be retained on file at  
21 the appropriate MNRF office. The Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and  
22 Métis Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the First Nation  
23 and Métis communities.

24

## 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A FMP summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft FMP and public inspection of the approved FMP. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The LCC may provide advice in the preparation of the FMP summary.

The FMP summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the FMP for each item:

- (a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNRF and/or an organization other than MNRF, such as a forest company);
- (b) the names of the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, plan author, and LCC contact;
- (c) a summary of the report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan (*NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.*);
- (d) a summary of the objectives and indicators;
- (e) a summary of road construction, harvest (area and volume), and renewal activities;
- (f) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations of new primary and branch roads, for the 10-year period of the FMP;
- (g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the FMP;
- (h) whether the FMP has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, under the ESA, in respect of a species at risk;
- (i) for the draft FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 60 day review period of the draft FMP to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or during the 30 days following the completion of the 60 day review period with the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1);
- (j) for the final FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNRF-approved FMP for any person to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in the FMP (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.2); and
- (k) a comment form (for draft plan only).

1 **8.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES**

2

3 The following tables are required for a FMP.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary**

Land Ownership and Type	Land Ownership (Hectares)			Total
	Crown Land		Patented	
	Managed	Other	Crown Timber	
Unsurveyed				
Non-forested				
Water				
Other Land				
Agricultural Land				
Grass & Meadow				
Unclassified				
Other				
<b>Subtotal Non-Forested</b>				
Forested				
Non-Productive Forest				
Treed Muskeg				
Open Muskeg				
Brush & Alder				
Rock				
<b>Subtotal Non-Productive</b>				
Productive Forest				
Protection Forest				
Site				
Islands				
<b>Subtotal Protection</b>				
Production Forest				
Recent Disturbance				
Below Regeneration Standards				
Forest Stands				
<b>Subtotal Production</b>				
<b>Subtotal Productive</b>				
<b>Subtotal Forested</b>				
<b>Total</b>				
	<b>Total Crown Land:</b>			

5

**INSTRUCTIONS****FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary**

This table summarizes the area of different Crown land types for the management unit at the start of the plan period. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory, where information is available, and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area in hectares by forest resources inventory (FRI) land type for each land ownership type and enter all subtotals and totals:

**Crown Land:**

**Managed:** All Crown land available for forest management purposes including, where appropriate, lands patented to Ontario government agencies. Crown Land – Managed may include area of some or all inventory land types (e.g., treed muskeg, protection forest and production forest). Area affected by forest management planning decisions (e.g., areas of concern reserves) is included.

**Other:** All Crown land that is not available for forest management purposes through legal designation, including areas established by policy direction (where forest management activity is not permitted) and provincial parks and conservation reserves regulated under the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act*. and higher order land use decisions (e.g., Ontario Living Legacy).

**Patented Land:**

**Crown Timber:** Patented land where the Crown has reserved rights to some or all of the trees.

Notes for selected inventory land types:

**Production Forest:** Includes production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

**Recent Disturbance:** Areas of stand replacing natural disturbance (e.g., fire, insect, blow down) or artificial disturbance (e.g., harvest) that have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

- 1           Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received
- 2           regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not
- 3           yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved FMP. Includes natural
- 4           disturbances and artificial disturbances.
- 5
- 6           Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas that have been successfully
- 7           regenerated.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-2: Description of Forest Units**

5

Forest Unit		Ecosite(s)	Regional Forest Unit	Silvicultural System	FRI Parameters & Criteria	Additional Information
Code	Name					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

**FMP-2: Description of Forest Units**

This table describes the forest units used to classify all forest stands of the management unit, including the stands that are not available for forest management activities. Forest units are used as the basis for summarizing data for many FMP, annual work schedule and management unit annual report tables.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

List each forest unit including an appropriate **Code** and a descriptive **Name**. The list should include all forest units currently represented and forest units that will occur in the future as a result of management actions.

**Eco-sites:**

Indicate the eco-site(s) that fall within the forest unit, based on the provincial Ecological Land Classification.

**Regional Forest Unit:**

Indicate the regional standard forest unit(s) classification that aligns with each forest unit.

**Silvicultural System:**

Indicate the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) to be used for the forest unit.

**FRI Parameters & Criteria:**

For the purpose of assigning a forest unit to each stand, identify the appropriate FRI parameters (e.g., species composition, site class, stocking) or other criteria by which the stands are classified (e.g., plantations).

**Additional Information:**

Indicate any other information that is useful in describing each forest unit.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

5

Forest Unit	Age Class	Protection Forest (ha)	Production Forest		
			Unavailable (ha)	Stage of Management	Available (ha)
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42

**FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the area of managed productive Crown forest (as shown in Table FMP-1) by forest unit and age class. The source of information for this table is the planning inventory with forest units as defined in FMP-2.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2.

**Age Class:**

Enter 20-year age classes for clearcut and shelterwood management. This column is not completed for the forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Protection Forest:**

Enter the area (hectares) by forest unit and age class.

**Production Forest:****Unavailable:**

Enter the area (hectares) of the Crown managed production forest that is not available for timber production as a result of forest management planning decisions, current forest management guides and other known factors (e.g., actual or anticipated reserves, inaccessible area).

**Stage of Management:**

Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Available:**

Enter the area (hectares) of the managed Crown production forest area minus the Unavailable area.

Enter all totals and subtotals as required.

Ensure that the total areas in the Protection Forest and Production Forest (Unavailable and Available) columns correspond with the productive forest subtotals in Table FMP-1.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules**

5

<b>SGR Code</b>		<b>Silvicultural System</b>		
<b>Current Condition</b>		<b>Future Condition</b>		<b>Regeneration Standards</b>
<b>Forest Units</b>	<b>Ecosite(s)</b>	<b>Forest Unit</b>	<b>Stand Characteristics</b>	
<b>Additional Information</b>		<b>Development Information</b>		

6

	<b>Silvicultural Treatments</b>				
	<b>Harvest Method</b>	<b>Logging Method</b>	<b>Site Preparation</b>	<b>Regeneration</b>	<b>Tending</b>
<b>Most Common Treatment Package</b>					
<b>Acceptable Alternative Treatments</b>					

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules**

This table describes the silvicultural systems and types of treatments that may be used to manage a specific current forest condition to achieve a desired future forest condition. The sources of information for the table are the applicable silvicultural guide(s) and the knowledge and experience of the plan author and planning team.

Complete the table as follows for each SGR to be applied to an applicable forest unit – eco-site.

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**SGR Code:**

Enter a label (maximum 15 characters) that identifies the SGR.

**Silvicultural System:**

Enter the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood and selection) under which each forest unit will be managed. Only one silvicultural system will be identified for each forest unit.

**Current Condition:**

Enter the forest units (identified in FMP-2) and eco-site(s). In describing eco-site, use the provincial Ecological Land Classification (ELC) or the best available site information. Provide any additional information as required (e.g., broad soil group). Forest units and ecosites can be grouped when the future condition, the regeneration standard, and the silvicultural treatments are identical.

**Future Condition:**

Future conditions (resulting from the implementation of the SGR) will be described in terms of the desired forest unit, stand characteristics and development information. Enter the desired forest unit. Enter the desired stand characteristics, (e.g., average species composition, and stocking, stand density) for the mature stand condition. The development information will identify the silvicultural stratum used for the performance assessment and forest level modelling.

**Regeneration Standards:**

The regeneration standard is the required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved. Regeneration standards will include establishment and performance parameters. The standards will be consistent with the definition of future forest condition used in the development of the LTMD (e.g., development of the yield curves).

1 For the establishment assessment, the observable measures will include age, height,  
2 species composition, the maximum time to establishment, and parameters  
3 representing the number and distribution of trees.

4  
5 For the performance assessment, the observable measures will be parameters  
6 required to project yield. Observable measures will normally include age, height,  
7 species composition, measure of site quality (e.g., site class or index), and  
8 parameters representing the number and distribution of trees. The yield identified in  
9 the table will be consistent with the definition of an applicable future forest  
10 condition used in the development of the LTMD (e.g., development of the yield  
11 curves).

12  
13 **Silvicultural Treatments:**

14 For each SGR, identify the most common series of silvicultural and acceptable  
15 alternative treatments. Where a silvicultural treatment differs from the  
16 recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide(s), that treatment will be  
17 identified as an exception.

18  
19 **Harvest Method:**

20 Enter the harvest method (e.g., strip clearcut, uniform shelterwood) and any  
21 reference to commercial thinning.

22  
23 **Logging Method:**

24 Enter the logging method (e.g., full tree, tree length or shortwood) to be used. Where  
25 there are options, indicate under what conditions the different methods will be used.  
26 Special restrictions on the type of logging equipment, the prescription for logging or  
27 the timing of logging to ensure site compatibility will be noted.

28  
29 **Site Preparation:**

30 Enter the site preparation treatment (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn).  
31 Combinations of site preparation treatments (e.g. chemical site preparation followed  
32 by prescribed burning) are acceptable.

33  
34 **Regeneration:**

35 Enter the regeneration treatments (e.g., natural, plant, seed). Regeneration  
36 treatments that are necessary to achieve the future stand condition will be identified  
37 (e.g. species, planting density, anticipated ingress).

38  
39 **Tending:**

40 Enter the tending treatments. Where achievement of a future stand condition  
41 requires a specific tending treatment (e.g., spacing), the details will be identified.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-5: Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules**

5

Forest Unit	Regeneration Type	Target Silvicultural Stratum					
		FU		FU		FU	
		%	Yield Curve	%	Yield Curve	%	Yield Curve

6  
7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**FMP-5: Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules**

This table describes the post-harvest renewal rules used in the development of the LTMD. The source of information for this table is the analysis of past silvicultural performance (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Complete the table as follows for each forest unit.

**Planned Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2.

**Regeneration Type:**

Enter the regeneration type (e.g., natural, plant, seed).

**Target Silvicultural Stratum:**

**FU:**

Enter the target forest unit as identified in the model used to develop the LTMD.

**Percent FU:**

Enter the proportion of the planned forest unit transitioning to the target silvicultural stratum as identified in the model used to develop the LTMD.

**Yield Curve:**

Enter the identifier for the yield curve that the target silvicultural stratum is projected to achieve.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-6: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

5

Forest Type	Age	Area (ha)					
		<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Forest Type Subtotal</b>							
<b>Total</b>							

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

**FMP-6: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

This table summarizes the area of Crown productive forest by forest type (e.g., forest unit or provincial forest type) and age (e.g., age class or seral stage) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the future forest conditions over time resulting from the LTMD.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Type:**

Enter the user defined forest type. The defined forest type may be forest units as in FMP-2 or forest unit groupings.

**Age:**

Enter the user defined age. The defined age may be a twenty year age class or a seral stage age. This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silviculture system.

**Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (hectares) for each forest type/age at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD. The information shown for <Year 0> will be consistent with the Crown productive forest total summarized in FMP-1 (Crown – Total).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-7: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

5

Species	Area (ha)					
	<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22

**FMP-7: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

This table summarizes the area of habitat for selected wildlife species by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the habitat availability over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Species:**

Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species.

**Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (hectares) of habitat for each selected wildlife species at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

5

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)					
	<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Total</b>						

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24

**FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the available harvest area (i.e., for a 10-year period) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the projected harvest area over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest area for the 10-year period (hectares) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product Group**

5

Species Group	Size or Product Group	Available Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )					
		<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Species Group Subtotal</b>							
<b>Total</b>							

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32

**FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product Group**

This table summarizes the estimated available harvest volume (i.e., for a 10-year period) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest volume by broad size or product group over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Species Group:**

Enter the species group (e.g., spruce/pine/fir, white/red pine). The species groups are normally the same as the species groups used in forest modelling.

**Size or Product Group:**

Enter the broad size or product group by species group.

**Available Harvest Volume (m<sup>3</sup>):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest volume for the 10-year period (cubic metres) by species group and broad size or product group at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-10: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

5

Management Objective	Indicator	Plan Start Level	Desirable Level	Timing of Assessment	Target	LTMD - Projections		Assessment
						Medium	Long	
Quantitative Objectives								
Qualitative Objectives	Assessment:							

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**FMP-10: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators and target information and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and the plan period.

**Management Objective:**

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

**Indicator:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

**Plan Start Level:**

Enter the FMP start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for a 10-year FMP period (e.g., available harvest volume)

**Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**Timing of Assessment:**

Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e., FMP preparation, and/or FMP implementation),

**Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**LTMD – Projections:**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the LTMD, for the target year and for the medium and long term.

1 **Assessment:**

2       Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each  
3       management objective. The assessment will consider the FMP start, desirable and  
4       target levels, and the trend of the indicator over time.

5

6 For each Qualitative Objective:

7

8       Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of  
9       achievement of each management objective.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-11: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits**

5

AOC ID	Group AOC	Description of Value		
<b>A. Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern</b>				
	<b>Operational Prescription</b>	<b>Source</b>	<b>Exception</b>	
<b>B. Primary Roads, Branch Roads, and Landings</b>				
	<b>Planned or Existing</b>	<b>Public Comment</b>	<b>Exception</b>	
	<b>Conditions on Location, Construction or Use</b>			
<b>C. Operational Roads, and Landings</b>				
	<b>Planned or Existing</b>	<b>Public Comment</b>	<b>Exception</b>	
	<b>Conditions on Location, Construction or Use</b>			
<b>D. Forestry Aggregate Pits</b>				
	<b>Planned or Existing</b>			<b>Exception</b>
	<b>Conditions on Location, Construction or Use</b>			

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-11: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits**

This table outlines the prescriptions and conditions for areas identified as areas of concern (AOC). Each table entry represents either a group of areas of concern with a common prescription, or an individual area of concern with a unique prescription.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**AOC Identifier:**

Enter the code by which an area of concern prescription and/or conditions can be identified on the operations maps and in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

**Group AOC:**

Note in the table “Yes” or “No” to indicate whether the prescription is a group AOC.

**Description of Value:**

Briefly describe the value for which an AOC prescription has been prepared.

**Part A: Operational Prescription**

Enter the operational prescription for the area of concern including any constraints on harvest, renewal and tending operations.

**Source:**

Enter source of the prescription, if applicable, including the title of the forest management guide and page number from which the prescription specific direction or recommendation is located.

**Exception:**

Where an area of concern prescription differs from specific direction or from a recommendation in the appropriate forest management guide, the prescription will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

**Parts B, C, and D: Conditions on Location, Construction or Use**

Enter conditions on location, construction or use (e.g., construction methods, mitigative measures, timing, marking or flagging requirements, notification requirements, crossing structure).

1 **Public Comment:**

2 Enter “Yes” or “No” if public comments have been received on the crossing. Public  
3 comments are recorded in the area of concern supplementary documentation for  
4 individual or groups of AOCs

5

6 **Exception:**

7 Where a condition on a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit differs from specific  
8 direction in the appropriate forest management guide, the condition will be  
9 considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-12: Planned Harvest Area**

5

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Planned Harvest Area 10 Year (ha)
<b>Stage of Management Subtotal</b>			
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>			
<b>Total</b>			

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

**FMP-12: Planned Harvest Area**

This table summarizes the available harvest area, and the planned harvest area, by forest unit for comparison. The source of information for this table is the LTMD and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the 10-year available harvest area (hectares) by forest unit.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Planned 10-Year Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the 10-year planned harvest area (hectares) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the planned area by stage of management and age class. The planned area will agree with the available harvest area by forest unit.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species**

5

Forest Unit	Volume Type	10-Year Available Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )		10-Year Planned Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )												
		Conifer	Hardwood	Conifer					Subtotal	Hardwood				Subtotal	Total	
	Net Merchantable															
	Sub-Total															
	Undersize & Defect															
	Sub-Total															
	Total															

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species**

This table summarizes the available harvest volume and compares the available harvest volume to the planned harvest volume by conifer and hardwood. The source of information for this table is the LTMD and the result of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-2.

**Volume Type:**

Enter the 10-year available harvest volume and planned harvest volume for net merchantable volume and undersize and defect volume.

**Ten Year Available Harvest Volume (m<sup>3</sup>):**

Enter the 10-year available harvest volume (cubic metres) for conifer and hardwood by forest unit. Ensure the available harvest volume matches the harvest volume in the LTMD.

**Ten Year Planned Harvest Volume (m<sup>3</sup>):**

**Conifer:**

Enter the 10-year planned conifer volume (cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the 10-year planned hardwood volume (cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization**

5

Licensee or Grouping	Planned Harvest Area (ha)	Utilization	Volume Type	Product	Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )												
					Conifer						Hardwood					Total	
										Subtotal					Subtotal		
			Net Merchantable														
			Undersize & Defect														
			<b>Total</b>														
		Utilized	Net Merchantable														
			Undersize & Defect														
			<b>Subtotal</b>														
		Unutilized	Net Merchantable														
			Undersize & Defect														
			<b>Subtotal</b>														
		<b>Total</b>															

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization**

This table summarizes projected utilization of the planned harvest volumes that are available for harvest from the planned harvest areas by species, product and volume type. Planning teams have the option of summarizing the planned harvest area by licensee or grouping. The table will summarize volume that is projected to be utilized and the volume that is currently anticipated to be unutilized but remains available for industrial uses.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Licensee or Grouping (Optional):**

List the licensees or groupings that are expected to conduct harvesting. Where licensees are not known, groupings (e.g., tendered sale areas) shall be indicated. In the case of overlapping licences, all licensees or groupings should be shown. Where the SFL holder is the only licensee, identify the SFL name.

**Planned Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the amount of planned harvest area (hectares) that is expected to be harvested by the licensees or groupings. Where overlapping licensees exist, the area may exceed the planned harvest area shown in FMP-12. Where only one licensee is identified, the area will be consistent with the planned harvest area shown in FMP-12.

**Volume Type:**

For the 10-year planned harvest area, identify the net merchantable and undersize or defect volumes.

**Utilization:**

For the 10-year planned harvest area, identify the volumes that are projected to be utilized to meet industrial wood requirements and the volumes above industrial wood requirements that are currently anticipated to be unutilized and available for industrial proposals. Unutilized volume also includes available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or harvested trees brought to roadside. Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the FMP does not condone wasteful practices.

**Product:**

Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer, bioproduct) where possible.

1 **Volume by Species (m<sup>3</sup>):**

2 Enter the volume (cubic metres) by species, product, volume type and utilization. If  
3 licensee or grouping is used, enter this information by licensee or grouping. If  
4 licensee or grouping is used, the column totals in licensee or grouping will equal the  
5 column totals in the utilized and unutilized part.

6  
7 Enter all subtotals and totals as required. Total of utilized and unutilized volumes should equal  
8 total of planned harvest volume identified in FMP-13.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-15: Projected Wood Utilization by Mill**

5

Mill	Wood Supply Mechanism	Volume (m3)	Volume Type	Product	Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )											
					Conifer					Hardwood					Total	
																Subtotal
			Net Merchantable													
				<b>Subtotal</b>												
			Undersize & Defect													
				<b>Subtotal</b>												
				<b>Total</b>												

6

**INSTRUCTIONS****FMP-15: Projected Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table lists the mills and the anticipated volumes each will utilize from the planned harvest area for the 10-year period. Volumes are summarized by volume type, product type and species. This table also summarizes the wood supply mechanisms through which the volumes were made available to each mill. The source of information for this table is FMP-13 and FMP-14 and information regarding industrial wood requirements for mills supplied from the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Mill:**

List all mills projected to be supplied from the management unit.

**Wood Supply Mechanism:**

Enter the type(s) of mechanism under which volumes are to be made available to a mill. Mechanisms will be described under the following categories:

- (a) Supply Agreement (i.e., wood supply agreement entered into under section 25 of the CFSA between the Minister and a mill);
- (b) Other Crown commitment (e.g., Crown wood supply commitment other than a supply agreement, a Minister's commitment letter);
- (c) SFL holder (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill owned/operated by the holder of a single entity SFL);
- (d) SFL shareholder (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill through the shareholder agreement for a shareholder SFL for the management unit);
- (e) Business arrangement (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill through business arrangements); and
- (f) Other (e.g., wood supply made available through a Forest Resource Licence, a conditional offer of a wood supply from the Crown, etc.)

**Volume:**

For each Crown wood supply commitment (i.e., Supply Agreement, other Crown commitment) enter the total volume committed. For all other wood supply mechanisms, enter the total volume that is intended to flow to each facility under that mechanism.

**Volume Type:**

- 1 Volumes projected to be utilized by each mill will be identified by net merchantable,
- 2 and undersize and defect.
- 3 **Product:**
- 4 Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, bioproduct) for each mill.
- 5
- 6 **Volume by Species:**
- 7 Enter the projected mill utilization volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by mill, wood supply mechanism,
- 8 product, and species. Ensure the total volume projected by species is consistent with
- 9 utilized harvest volume in FMP-14 (with appropriate modification).
- 10
- 11 Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume**

5

Forest Unit	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Contingency Harvest Area (ha)	Contingency Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )		
			Conifer	Hardwood	Total
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

**FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume**

This table summarizes the contingency harvest area and associated volume. The sources of information for this table are the LTMD and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Contingency Harvest Area:**

Enter the contingency harvest area (hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the contingency harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Include subtotal by forest units.

**Contingency Harvest Volume:**

**Conifer:**

Enter the conifer volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the hardwood volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Total:**

Enter the total volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations**

5

	Area (ha)	
	Planned (10-Year)	
	Harvest	Natural Disturbance
<b>Renewal</b>		
<b>Regeneration</b>		
<b>Natural</b>		
Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)		
Block Cut		
Strip Cut		
Seed Tree Cut		
HARP/HARO/CLAAG		
Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)		
Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut		
Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut		
Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)		
<b>Subtotal Natural</b>		
<b>Artificial</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Subtotal Artificial</b>		
<b>Total Regeneration</b>		
<b>Artificial - Retreatment</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Total Retreatment</b>		
<b>Artificial - Supplemental</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Total Supplemental</b>		
<b>Site Preparation</b>		
Mechanical		
Chemical	Aerial	
	Ground	
Prescribed Burn	High Complexity	
	Slash Pile Burn	
<b>Total Site Preparation</b>		
<b>Tending</b>		
<b>Cleaning</b>		
Manual		
Mechanical		
Chemical	Aerial	
	Ground	
Prescribed Burn	High Complexity	
<b>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting</b>		
Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)		
Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)		
<b>Other</b>		
Cultivation		
Pruning		
<b>Total Tending</b>		

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations**

This table summarizes the area of renewal (regeneration and site preparation) and tending operations that are planned by disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural) and by treatment method. The source of information for this table is the LTMD, the selection of silviculture operations and the current FMP.

Note: There is no requirement to plan natural regeneration for natural disturbances.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area (hectares) for the 10-year FMP period by renewal and tending treatments.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Planned silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance) and enter the area in hectares by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included under the natural disturbance columns.

**Renewal**

**Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with retreatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

**Site Preparation:**

Enter the area of site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burn, enter the net area only.

- 1
- 2 **Tending**
- 3       Enter the area of tending by treatment.
- 4
- 5 Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3

4 **FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management**

5

Road or Road Network Identifier	Responsibility	Plan Start Length (km)	Planned Construction 10 Year	Use Management					
				Maintenance	Monitoring	Access Control		Future Use Management	
						Type	Year	Transfer Year	Management Intent
A. Primary									
<b>Subtotal</b>									
B. Branch									
<b>Subtotal</b>									
<b>Total</b>									
C. Operational									
<b>Subtotal</b>									
<b>Total</b>									

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management**

This table summarizes planned road construction, use management, and responsibility for all primary, branch, and operational roads or operational road networks, for the 10-year period of the FMP. Existing roads that are the responsibility of the licensee, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes, are also identified.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Road or Road Network Identifier:**

For each primary, branch and operational road, or network of operational roads, enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

**Responsibility:**

For each road, enter the party responsible for the road (e.g., SFL, MNRF, Other).

**Plan Start Length:**

For each road, enter the kilometres of existing road at the beginning of the FMP period. For new roads, enter "0".

**Construction:**

**Planned 10 Year::**

For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of planned construction (10 Year) where applicable.

**Use Management:**

For each primary, branch and operational road or network of operational roads, complete the following columns.

**Maintenance:**

Provide a brief summary of the maintenance including emergency repairs to road water crossings that is likely to occur during the 10-year period.

**Monitoring:**

Provide a schedule of monitoring activities, including monitoring of watercrossings, that is likely to occur during the 10-year period.

**Access Control:**

- 1           Type: If applicable, enter the type of existing access control (under the *Public Lands*
- 2           *Act*, any other form of regulation, or forest management planning decision) or access
- 3           provision that is to be established during the 10-year period.
- 4
- 5           Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2019/2020) in which access control
- 6           is to be established during the 10-year period.
- 7
- 8           **Future Use Management:**
- 9           Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2024/2025) in which
- 10          responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNRF.
- 11
- 12          Management Intent: Indicate MNRF’s management intent (e.g., MNRF maintain,
- 13          MNRF transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission, or no longer
- 14          maintain).
- 15
- 16          Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

- 1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
- 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO
- 3
- 4 **FMP-19: Planned Expenditures**
- 5

<b>Expenditures (\$)</b>		
<b>Activity</b>	<b>Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)</b>	<b>Forestry Futures Trust (000s \$)</b>
<b>Natural Regeneration</b>		
<b>Tree Marking</b>		
<b>Artificial Regeneration</b>		
<b>Site Preparation</b>		
<b>Tending</b>		
<b>Renewal Support</b>		
<b>Silvicultural Surveys</b>		
<b>Other Eligible Silviculture Work</b>		
<b>Protection</b>		
<b>Total</b>		

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**FMP-19: Planned Expenditures**

This table summarizes the planned expenditures to be made by activity and funding source for the 10-year period. The source of information for this table is the forecast of operations summarized in FMP-17.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Expenditures:**

Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

**Activity:**

Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

**Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust (000s \$):**

Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required. Do not include HST in the amounts entered.

Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration** -Activities include harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting, and scarification.

**Tree Marking** – Activities include tree marking for harvest using the selection and shelterwood silvicultural system. Boundary marking is ineligible.

**Artificial Regeneration** -Activities include tree planting (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings) and seeding (aerial and with site preparation).

**Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical, including cost of chemicals, chipper and debris piling, and prescribed burn.

**Tending** - Activities include spacing, thinning (i.e., pre-commercial), improvement cut (i.e., even-aged and uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings).

**Silvicultural Surveys** – Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., establishment, performance, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Other Eligible Silvicultural Work (ESW)** - Includes associated administrative overhead.

- 1      **Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3  
 4 **FMP-20: Planned Assessment of Establishment**

5

**Current plan period:**

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit	Silvicultural Ground Rule (by Plan Period)	Assigned to SGR (ha) (all years)	Planned Assessment of Establishment (ha)
<u>Harvest</u>			
<u>Salvage Harvest</u>			
Forest Unit Subtotal			
Total			

**Past Plan Period:**

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit	Silvicultural Ground Rule (by Plan Period)	Assigned to SGR (ha) (all years)	Planned Assessment of Establishment (ha)
<u>Harvest</u>			
<u>Salvage Harvest</u>			
Forest Unit Subtotal			
Total			

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

**FMP-20: Planned Assessment of Establishment**

This table summarizes the area (hectares) to be assessed for establishment during the 10-year period of the FMP by forest unit and SGR. The source of information for this table is a record of applicable SGRs (current and past FMPs), harvest and silvicultural treatments. The amount of area planned to be assessed for establishment should be consistent with the level of regeneration success required to meet FMP objectives and the LTMD as well as levels of past disturbance (i.e., harvest and natural).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Past Plan Period:**

Enter the FMP period when the harvest occurred.

**Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP applied to the stands at the time of harvest.

**Silvicultural Ground Rule by plan period:**

Enter the SGR from FMP-4 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP applied to the stands at the time of harvest. In the case where an original SGR was changed, enter only the final SGR implemented.

**Assigned to SGR (all years):**

Enter the total area assigned to the relevant SGR for areas that have been harvested.

**Planned Assessment of Establishment**

Enter the area (hectares) to be assessed.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1  
2

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1

2

3 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST**

4 **MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, MID-PLAN CHECKS ..... 5**

5 **1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 5**

6 Phase-In Provisions ..... 5

7 **2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS ..... 6**

8 2.1 Introduction ..... 6

9 2.2 Requested Amendment ..... 7

10 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments ..... 7

11 2.2.2 Administrative Amendments ..... 9

12 2.2.3 Minor Amendments ..... 9

13 2.2.4 Major Amendments ..... 10

14 2.3 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction ..... 11

15 2.4 Amendment Documentation ..... 12

16 2.5 Deemed Amendments ..... 13

17 2.6 Amendment Availability ..... 14

18 **3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS ..... 19**

19 3.1 Introduction ..... 19

20 3.2 Contingency Plans ..... 19

21 3.2.1 Contingency Plan Proposal ..... 19

22 3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan ..... 20

23 3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan ..... 21

24 3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan ..... 22

25 Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction ..... 22

26 After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction ..... 22

27 3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules ..... 23

28 3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Forest Management Plan Renewal ..... 23

29 3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan ..... 23

30 3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability ..... 24

31 **4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... 26**

32 4.1 Introduction ..... 26

33 4.2 Proposal for Early Forest Management Plan Renewal ..... 26

34 4.3 MNRF Regional Director Review and Approval ..... 26

35 **5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS ..... 27**

36 5.1 Introduction ..... 27

37 5.2 Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal ..... 27

38 5.2.1 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension

39 Proposal ..... 28

40 5.2.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal ..... 28

41 5.2.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal ..... 28

1	5.3	Preparation of a Forest Management Plan Extension.....	29
2	5.3.1	Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension .....	29
3	5.3.2	Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension...30	
4	5.3.3.	Forest Management Plan Extension Availability .....	30
5	<b>6.0</b>	<b>MID-PLAN CHECKS .....</b>	<b>32</b>
6	6.1	Introduction .....	32
7	6.2	Preparation of a Mid-Plan Check .....	32
8	6.3	Submission, Review and Approval.....	33
9	6.4	Mid-Plan Check Documentation .....	34
10	6.5	Mid-Plan Check Availability.....	35
11	<b>7.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>37</b>
12	7.1	General.....	37
13	7.1.1	Public Notices.....	37
14	7.1.2	Responses to Comments .....	37
15	7.1.3	French Language Services Act.....	38
16	7.1.4	Environmental Bill of Rights.....	38
17	7.1.5	Issue Resolution .....	39
18	7.2	Minor Amendments.....	39
19	7.2.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	39
20	7.2.2	Information and Maps Available .....	39
21	7.3	Major Amendments.....	40
22	7.3.1	General.....	40
23	7.3.2	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	40
24	7.3.2.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	40
25	7.3.2.2	Information and Maps Available .....	41
26	7.3.3	Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment.....	41
27	7.3.3.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	41
28	7.3.3.2	Information and Maps Available .....	41
29	7.3.3.3	Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment.....	41
30	7.4	Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction.....	42
31	7.4.1	General.....	42
32	7.4.2	Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	42
33	7.4.2.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	42
34	7.4.2.2	Information and Maps Available .....	43
35	7.4.3	Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .....	43
36	7.4.3.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	44
37	7.4.3.2	Information and Maps Available .....	44
38	7.4.4	Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management	
39		Direction Amendment .....	44
40	7.4.4.1	Public Notice Requirements .....	44
41	7.4.4.2	Information and Maps Available .....	45
42	7.4.4.3	Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment.....	45
43	7.5	Deemed Amendments.....	45

1	7.5.1	Information and Maps Available.....	45
2	7.6	Contingency Plans .....	45
3	7.6.1	General.....	45
4	7.6.1.1	Public Notice Requirements.....	46
5	7.6.1.2	Information and Maps Available.....	46
6	7.7	Forest Management Plan Extension .....	46
7	7.7.1	Public Notice Requirements.....	46
8	7.7.1.1	Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension.....	47
9	7.7.1.2	Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension.....	47
10	7.7.3	Forest Management Plan Extension Availability .....	48
11	7.8	Mid-Plan Check .....	48
12	7.8.1	Public Notice Requirements.....	48
13	<b>8.0</b>	<b>FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION. 50</b>	
14	8.1	Introduction .....	50
15	8.2	Minor Amendments.....	50
16	8.3	Major Amendments .....	51
17	8.3.1	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	51
18	8.3.2	Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment .....	52
19	8.4	Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction .....	52
20	8.4.1	Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	52
21	8.4.2	Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	52
22	8.4.3	Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction	
23		Amendment .....	53
24	8.5	Deemed Amendments .....	53
25	8.6	Contingency Plans .....	53
26	8.7	Forest Management Plan Extension .....	54
27	8.8	Mid-Plan Check .....	54
28			
29			

**LIST OF FIGURES**

1  
2  
3 **Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 15**  
4 **Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 16**  
5 **Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page..... 17**  
6 **Figure C-4: Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and**  
7 **Approval Page ..... 18**  
8 **Figure C-5: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 25**  
9 **Figure C-6: Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval**  
10 **Page..... 31**  
11 **Figure C-7: Mid-Plan Check - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 36**  
12

1 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS,**  
2 **FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, MID-PLAN CHECKS**

3  
4  
5 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**  
6

7 This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest  
8 management plans, contingency plans, early renewals of forest management plans, forest  
9 management plan (FMP) extensions, and mid-plan checks.

10  
11 **Phase-In Provisions**  
12

13 The requirements of Part C will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management  
14 Planning Manual (FMPM), except as follows:  
15

- 16 • For Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - 17 ▪ For plan amendments categorized by the Ministry of Natural Resources Forestry
  - 18 (MNRF) district manager prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those
  - 19 amendments will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009);
  - 20 ▪ For plan amendments categorized by the MNRF district manager after the
  - 21 effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared, to the extent
  - 22 reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of
  - 23 this FMPM. However, table formats should remain consistent with the existing
  - 24 approved forest management plan. The plan author and appropriate MNRF staff
  - 25 will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with
  - 26 concurrence of the MNRF district manager, will implement the phase-in
  - 27 provisions in a reasonable and practical manner. Phase-in provisions will be
  - 28 documented in the amendment request.
  - 29
- 30 • For Part C, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - 31 ▪ For contingency plan proposals approved by the MNRF regional director prior to
  - 32 the effective date of this FMPM, those contingency plans will be prepared in
  - 33 accordance with the FMPM (2009).
  - 34
- 35 • Part C, Section 6.0, 7.8, and 8.8 will only apply to forest management plans scheduled for
- 36 renewal on or after April 1, 2019.
- 37
- 38 • For Part C, Sections 7.1 to 7.3 and 8.1 to 8.3, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - 39 ▪ If the MNRF district manager has categorized an amendment prior to the
  - 40 effective date of this FMPM, the requirements regarding public consultation and
  - 41 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation of Part C, 6.1 to
  - 42 6.3 and 7.1 to 7.3 of the FMPM (2009) will apply.

## 2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS

### 2.1 Introduction

An amendment will be prepared for changes to a FMP or contingency plan. Part D, Section 3.5 identifies specific circumstances when changes during annual work schedule implementation do not require an amendment.

The following two types of amendments may be prepared for changes to a FMP:

- (a) a requested amendment to a FMP that will be consistent with the LTMD for the management unit; and
- (b) an MNRF regional director required amendment to the long-term management direction (LTMD) of an approved FMP to address a change in legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g., *Endangered Species Act, 2007 (ESA)*), policy, or a major disturbance that has occurred on the management unit.

An amendment to a contingency plan will be consistent with the planning proposal for the contingency plan previously approved by the MNRF regional director (Part C, Section 3.2.1).

An amendment to a FMP that has been extended will be consistent with the planning proposal for the FMP extension previously approved by the MNRF regional director (Part C, Section 5.2).

The plan author will prepare and certify an amendment, and submit the amendment to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM and Forest Information Manual (FIM). The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

The planning requirements for a requested amendment will depend on the nature of the proposed changes but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required in the preparation of a FMP. However, the MNRF review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, will differ dependent on the category of amendment.

An amendment to provide protection for a species at risk will be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk and the ESA. Amendments will be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

1 If a FMP or contingency plan has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument  
2 in respect of a species at risk, any proposed amendment to the FMP or contingency plan will  
3 be assessed by the district manager to determine whether it would affect the requirements  
4 of the FMP or contingency plan that address ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA with respect to the  
5 species. If the amendment would not affect these requirements, the amendment will  
6 proceed in accordance with Part C, Section 2.2.

7  
8 If the proposed amendment would affect the requirements of the FMP or contingency plan  
9 that address ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA with respect to a species at risk, before the  
10 amendment to the FMP or contingency plan is approved, the Minister or the Minister's  
11 delegate will form opinions regarding whether the FMP or contingency plan in its proposed  
12 amended form would satisfy the requirements of ss. 18 (1)(e)(iii). Prior to amendment  
13 approval, the Minister or Minister's delegate will also consider any statement that has been  
14 published under subsection 11(8) of the ESA that applies to a species at risk for which the  
15 FMP or contingency plan would be designated as a Section 18 Instrument in its amended  
16 form.

## 17 18 19 **2.2 Requested Amendment**

20  
21 Requested amendments will be consistent with the LTMD for the management unit. Any  
22 person can request an amendment by submitting a written request to the MNRF district  
23 manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

- 24  
25 (a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;  
26 (b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its  
27 significance; and  
28 (c) if new operations are proposed:  
29 (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of  
30 the previously approved operations in the FMP or contingency plan  
31 that will be changed by the proposed amendment; and  
32 (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed  
33 operations, including public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
34 community involvement and consultation, based on the planning  
35 requirements for similar operations in a FMP.  
36  
37

### 38 **2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments**

39  
40 The MNRF district manager, in consultation with the plan author and the local citizens'  
41 committee (LCC), will decide if preparation of the requested amendment should proceed,

1 and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major.  
2 The MNRF district manager, in making their decision, will consider factors including:

- 3
- 4 (a) whether the requested amendment is consistent with the LTMD of the FMP;
  - 5 (b) whether a First Nation or Métis community's established or credibly asserted  
6 Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by the proposed  
7 amendment;
  - 8 (c) the amount of planning required for the proposed amendment;
  - 9 (d) the amount of anticipated public or First Nation and Métis community  
10 interest in the proposed amendment;
  - 11 (e) whether there are legitimate time constraints that must be met for reasons of  
12 public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and  
13 necessity;
  - 14 (f) requests of a similar nature;
  - 15 (g) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the  
16 request on values potentially affected;
  - 17 (h) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations;
  - 18 (i) the necessity to comply with new laws, any order of a court or tribunal, or any  
19 authorization made under a statute or regulation; and
  - 20 (j) the urgency to provide protection for species at risk under the ESA.
- 21

22 When the MNRF district manager has made a preliminary determination that an amendment  
23 should be categorized as administrative, and the LCC is not readily available for consultation  
24 on the categorization of the amendment, the MNRF district manager may instead consult  
25 the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization  
26 of the amendment.

27

28 If an amendment is required to provide protection to a species at risk, under the ESA, and  
29 the required changes are consistent with the LTMD for the management unit, the MNRF  
30 district manager should categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning to  
31 provide protection and ensure continuation of operations. The amendment will normally be  
32 categorized as administrative.

33

34 If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural  
35 disturbance, the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, will categorize the  
36 amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest  
37 operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood. If the LCC is not readily available for  
38 consultation on the categorization of the amendment in the situations described above, the  
39 MNRF district manager may consult the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the  
40 purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

41

42 The decision on the amendment request and the appropriate category of amendment will  
43 normally be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNRF district manager will  
44 prepare a written decision, and if the LCC disagrees with the categorization of the

1 amendment, the MNRF district manager will record the nature of that disagreement in that  
2 written decision. The decision will be provided to the amendment requestor, the LCC and  
3 the sustainable forest licensee. If the decision is to proceed with the amendment, the plan  
4 author will prepare and submit the amendment.

#### 5 6 7 2.2.2 Administrative Amendments

8  
9 If the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that a proposed  
10 amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is  
11 administrative, the necessary planning will be completed, the amendment prepared and  
12 certified by the plan author responsible for the preparation of the administrative  
13 amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

14  
15 MNRF will undertake an internal review of the administrative amendment. This review may  
16 recommend approval of the administrative amendment as submitted, or identify required  
17 alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF district manager,  
18 MNRF will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

19  
20 After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the administrative amendment,  
21 the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per  
22 the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager or MNRF district supervisor will  
23 certify and approve the administrative amendment. Figure C-1 provides the format for the  
24 title, certification and approval page for an administrative amendment. The FIM provides  
25 direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted  
26 amendments to FMPs.

27  
28 There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an  
29 administrative amendment. The approved administrative amendment will be available to  
30 the public (Part C, Section 2.5).

#### 31 32 33 2.2.3 Minor Amendments

34  
35 If the MNRF district manager in consultation with the LCC decides that the amendment  
36 should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the public  
37 consultation requirements described in Part C, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 will apply. The  
38 amendment will be prepared in consultation with interested and affected persons,  
39 organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, certified by the plan author who is  
40 responsible for the preparation of the minor amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

41  
42 MNRF will undertake an internal review of the minor amendment. This review may  
43 recommend approval of the minor amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations

1 and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will forward  
2 the required alterations to the plan author.

3  
4 After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the minor amendment, the plan  
5 author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per the  
6 requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager will certify and approve the minor  
7 amendment. Figure C-2 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for  
8 a minor amendment. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages  
9 associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs. The approved minor  
10 amendment will be available for public inspection (Part C, Section 2.5).

#### 11 12 13 2.2.4 Major Amendments

14  
15 If the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that the amendment  
16 should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment  
17 will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons, organizations,  
18 and First Nation and Métis communities.

19  
20 As described in Part C, Sections 7.3 and 8.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and  
21 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at two  
22 stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

23  
24 After stage one of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
25 and consultation during the preparation of the proposed major amendment, as described in  
26 Part C, Sections 7.3.2 and 8.3.1, the major amendment will be prepared. The major  
27 amendment will be certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the  
28 major amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

29  
30 MNRF will undertake an internal review of the major amendment, in accordance with the  
31 same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNRF  
32 considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the  
33 major amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them.  
34 Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the  
35 required alterations to the plan author.

36  
37 After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the plan  
38 author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as  
39 per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and  
40 recommend the major amendment for approval by the MNRF regional director, in  
41 accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever  
42 modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

1 MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF’s Statement of Environmental Values  
2 (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has  
3 been considered in the development of the major amendment, in the form of an SEV  
4 consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the major  
5 amendment when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

6  
7 After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved major amendment is  
8 available for inspection at stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
9 community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 7.3.3 and 8.3.2.  
10 Figure C-3 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major  
11 amendment. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages  
12 associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

### 13 14 15 **2.3 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction**

16  
17 The MNRF regional director may require an amendment to the LTMD of an approved FMP to  
18 address one of the following:

- 19 (a) a change in legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g., ESA);
- 20 (b) a change in policy; or
- 21 (c) a major disturbance (e.g., forest fire) that has occurred on the management  
22 unit.  
23

24  
25 As described in Part C, Sections 7.4 and 8.4, formal opportunities for public consultation and  
26 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at three  
27 stages in the preparation of an amendment to the LTMD.

28  
29 The required amendment to the LTMD will be prepared in accordance with Part A, sections  
30 1.2 to 1.2.7 (Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction), with  
31 whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary. After the requirements in sections 1.2 to  
32 1.2.7 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance with the  
33 requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.2 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement  
34 and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 8.4.1. The MNRF  
35 review and preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will be undertaken in accordance with  
36 Part A, Section 1.3.2.

37  
38 After the MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, the planning of  
39 proposed operations will proceed. The selection of areas of operations will be in accordance  
40 with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11. After the requirements in sections  
41 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance  
42 with the requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.3 and the First Nation and Métis community  
43 involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 8.4.2.  
44

1 After stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
2 and consultation (Part C, Sections 7.4.3 and 8.4.2,) the necessary planning will be completed  
3 and the amendment to the LTMD will be prepared. The amendment to the LTMD will be  
4 certified by the plan author and submitted to MNRF.

5  
6 MNRF will undertake an internal review of the amendment to the LTMD, in accordance with  
7 the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNRF  
8 considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the  
9 amendment to the LTMD as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for  
10 them. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward any  
11 required alterations to the plan author.

12  
13 After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the amendment, the plan author  
14 will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as per the  
15 requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and recommend  
16 the amendment to the LTMD for approval by the MNRF regional director in accordance with  
17 the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever modifications MNRF  
18 considers necessary in the circumstances. If the MNRF regional director agrees with the  
19 MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation the MNRF regional director will  
20 approve the amendment to the LTMD.

21  
22 MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF’s SEV has been considered in the  
23 development of the amendment to the LTMD, in the form of an SEV consideration  
24 document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the amendment to the LTMD  
25 when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

26  
27 After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD  
28 is available for inspection at stage three of public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
29 community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 7.4.4 and 8.4.3.  
30 Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an  
31 amendment to the LTMD. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval  
32 pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

## 33 34 35 **2.4 Amendment Documentation**

36  
37 Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to the preparation of  
38 an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for an  
39 amendment include:

- 40  
41 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
42 (b) for requested amendments, the amendment request;

- 1 (c) for requested amendments, the MNRF district manager decision on
- 2 classification and decision to proceed, including any comments from the LCC
- 3 and MNRF district manager rationale;
- 4 (d) amended text, tables, supplementary documentation, and information
- 5 products;
- 6 (e) comments from the LCC; and
- 7 (f) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation,
- 8 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue
- 9 resolution.

10  
11 For an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan that has been designated as a Section 18  
12 Overall Benefit Instrument in respect of a species at risk, and the amendment has been  
13 assessed and would affect the requirements of the FMP that address ss. 18(1)(iii) of the ESA  
14 with respect to the species, the following additional documentation requirements will  
15 include:

- 16
- 17 (a) Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act; and
- 18 (b) Figure B-4: Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that
- 19 relate to the Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument.
- 20

21 Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the  
22 amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

23  
24 If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard  
25 expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those  
26 people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, similar to a forest  
27 management plan (Part B, Figure B-1C).

28  
29 If applicable, a List of Exceptions will be prepared, in the same format as for a FMP (Part B,  
30 Figure B-2), to identify prescriptions or conditions that differ from specific direction or  
31 recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.

32  
33 For a major amendment and an amendment to the LTMD, an SEV consideration document  
34 will be prepared by MNRF, and will accompany the amendment when it is submitted to the  
35 MNRF regional director for approval.

## 36 37 38 **2.5 Deemed Amendments**

39  
40 Section 11(3) of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, 1994 provides that a FMP is deemed to  
41 include part(s) of an agreement, permit or instrument issued under the ESA (e.g., S.17 2(c)  
42 permits). In the event that a FMP is amended pursuant to Section 11 (3), the requirements of  
43 Part C, Sections 2.1 to 2.5, 7.0, and 8.0 of this manual will not apply. The parts of the  
44 agreement, permit, or instrument that are deemed to be included in the FMP will be

1 available with the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the  
2 Ontario Government website.

3  
4 The deemed amendment will be submitted to MNRF in a manner similar to a FMP  
5 amendment. Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted  
6 with the deemed amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. Applicable  
7 documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to a deemed amendment to a  
8 FMP or contingency plan.

9  
10

## 11 **2.6 Amendment Availability**

12  
13 All approved amendments will form part of, and will be available with, the approved FMP at  
14 the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.  
15 Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can  
16 arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the amendment.

17  
18 An up-to-date list of all approved amendments will also be available on the Ontario  
19 Government website with the approved FMP. The list will include:

20

- 21 (a) the amendment number;
- 22 (b) the reason for the amendment;
- 23 (c) for requested amendments, the amendment category; and
- 24 (d) the amendment approval date.

25

**Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN Amendment #:  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRFF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this administrative amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]  
[if applicable]

I hereby certify that this administrative amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this administrative amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRFF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this administrative amendment has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this administrative amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

[MNRFF District Manager or District Supervisor] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]

1 **Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN Amendment #:  
4 for the  
5 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
6  
7 [MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization]  
9 for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

10  
11 I hereby confirm that this minor amendment has been prepared in accordance with the  
12 requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information  
13 Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

14  
15  
16 Prepared by: [name] [date]  
17 [if applicable]

18  
19 I hereby certify that this minor amendment has been developed in accordance with the  
20 requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information  
21 Manual.

22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27 [R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

28  
29  
30  
31 I approve this minor amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in  
32 accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest  
33 Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF  
34 agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this minor amendment has been  
35 prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this minor amendment,  
36 prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest  
37 management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

38  
39 Certified and Approved by:

40  
41  
42 [MNRF District Manager] [date]

43  
44 Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]

**Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the Amendment #:  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this major amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]  
[if applicable]

I hereby certify that this major amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I recommend that this major amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this major amendment has been prepared using the forest management guides. In this major amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]

1 **Figure C-4: Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and**  
2 **Approval Page**

3  
4 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN Amendment #:  
5 for the  
6 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
7  
8 [MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
9 [Name of plan author's organization]  
10 for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

11  
12 I hereby confirm that this amendment has been prepared in accordance with the  
13 requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information  
14 Manual.

15  
16  
17 Prepared by: [name] [date]  
18 [if applicable]

19  
20 I hereby certify that this amendment has been developed in accordance with the  
21 requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information  
22 Manual.

23  
24  
25 [R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

26  
27 I recommend that this amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has  
28 been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning  
29 Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any  
30 relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this amendment has  
31 been prepared using the forest management guides. In this amendment, prescriptions that  
32 differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management  
33 guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

34  
35 Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

36  
37  
38 [MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

39  
40 Approved by:

41  
42 [MNRF Regional Director] [date]

43  
44 Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]

45

1 **3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS**

2  
3 **3.1 Introduction**

4  
5 A contingency plan is an interim FMP required when circumstances affect the  
6 implementation of a FMP. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.2.2. The  
7 contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the  
8 expiry of the current FMP and the approval for implementation of the new FMP. The  
9 maximum period of a contingency plan will be consistent with the timeframe to prepare,  
10 review, and approve a 10-year FMP (i.e., 36 months, as per Figure A-1).

11  
12 A FMP extension may also permit the implementation of operations from the current FMP  
13 until the approval of the new FMP (Part C, Section 5.0).

14  
15 When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNRF district manager or  
16 MNRF regional resources manager will notify the MNRF regional director. Prior to preparing  
17 the contingency plan, a planning proposal must be endorsed by the MNRF regional director.

18  
19  
20 **3.2 Contingency Plans**

21  
22 3.2.1 Contingency Plan Proposal

23  
24 If a contingency plan is warranted, a planning proposal for a contingency plan will be  
25 prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF.

26  
27 The contingency plan proposal will provide:

- 28  
29 (a) the name of the management unit;  
30 (b) the reason for the contingency plan;  
31 (c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;  
32 (d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan,  
33 including supplementary documentation;  
34 (e) whether the contingency plan is proposed to be designated as a Section 18  
35 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA. If the contingency plan is proposed  
36 to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, the requirements  
37 of Part A, Section 1.0 will apply and Figure B-4 will be completed with respect  
38 to the contents of the contingency plan;  
39 (f) a description of the public consultation and First Nation and Métis community  
40 involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of  
41 the new FMP;  
42 (g) a description of the proposed opportunities for public consultation, First  
43 Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue  
44 resolution in the preparation of the contingency plan;

- 1 (h) the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on Protection  
2 of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;
- 3 (i) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency  
4 plan;
- 5 (j) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the LCC;
- 6 (k) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by  
7 operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;
- 8 (l) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if  
9 any;
- 10 (m) a discussion of the effect on the timing of the preparation and approval ( i.e.,  
11 planning schedule), and period of the new FMP;
- 12 (n) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency  
13 plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- 14 (o) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the  
15 sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional  
16 resources manager, and the MNRF regional director.

17

18 Opportunities for public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and  
19 consultation, and issue resolution will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP,  
20 subject to any modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, and will have  
21 regard for the extent of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community  
22 involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP.

23

24 The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the  
25 involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of a contingency plan  
26 is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under  
27 subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where  
28 appropriate, accommodate.

29

30 The MNRF regional director will review the contingency plan proposal and decide if a  
31 contingency plan will be prepared. If a contingency plan will be prepared, the MNRF regional  
32 director will provide written notice to the MOECC director, Environmental Approvals Branch.  
33 The notice will:

- 34
- 35 (a) identify the proposed period of the contingency plan; and
- 36 (b) describe the effect of proceeding with the contingency plan on the timing of  
37 the preparation and approval of the new FMP.
- 38

### 39

#### 40 3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan

41

42 The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the planning proposal endorsed by  
43 the MNRF regional director and the requirements in this section. The contingency plan will

1 be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a  
2 planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2) and a LCC.

3  
4 Contingency plan documentation will include:

- 5  
6 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
7 (b) a completed Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act, if  
8 applicable (Part B, Figure B-1B);  
9 (c) an index to Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Components, if applicable  
10 (Part B, Figure B-4);  
11 (d) the planning proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;  
12 (e) the summary of the LTMD that applies to the contingency plan (Part C,  
13 Section 3.2.2.2);  
14 (f) a discussion on how the available harvest area for the period of the  
15 contingency plan was pro-rated from the LTMD;  
16 (g) the content requirements, as per Part B, Sections 4.1 to 4.8 for all areas of  
17 operations, and if applicable, Part B, Section 4.9 for new areas of operations;  
18 (h) other content requirements identified in the endorsed planning proposal;  
19 (i) comments from the LCC; and  
20 (j) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation,  
21 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and issue  
22 resolution.

23  
24 The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
25 and consultation for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 7.6 and 8.6.

26  
27 A brief description of how MNRF's SEV has been considered in the development of the  
28 contingency plan must be included, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

### 29 30 31 3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan

32  
33 A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP (e.g.,  
34 after stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a short-term plan  
35 and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is approved for  
36 implementation.

37  
38 The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations in non-contentious areas from  
39 the draft FMP and may also include areas from the current FMP that have not yet been  
40 harvested, renewed or tended. Non-contentious areas will be determined based on  
41 comments received from the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the  
42 preparation and review of the draft FMP.

1 3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

2  
3 A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the preparation of a FMP (e.g.,  
4 prior to stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a one or two-  
5 year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is prepared and  
6 approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation  
7 and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning  
8 proposal, will be conducted.

9  
10

11 Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

12  
13 If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director before the MNRF  
14 regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan  
15 will be consistent with the LTMD in the current FMP. The contingency plan will normally  
16 incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including  
17 contingency area, and additional areas if required.

18  
19 If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, the contingency  
20 plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If  
21 additional area is required, operations will be planned in a manner consistent with the LTMD  
22 (or strategic direction) of the current FMP, and the public consultation and First Nation and  
23 Métis community involvement and consultation described in the endorsed planning  
24 proposal. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in  
25 accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section  
26 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

27  
28

29 After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

30  
31 If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director after the MNRF regional  
32 director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan will be  
33 consistent with that LTMD. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from  
34 the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and  
35 additional areas if required.

36  
37 If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, and operations in  
38 those areas is consistent with the LTMD, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas,  
39 and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, the  
40 contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious areas that have been identified  
41 during the development of the LTMD, and reviewed by the public and First Nation and Métis  
42 community(s) at stage two or stage three of consultation. The planning of operations for the  
43 additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and  
44 documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

1 3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

2  
3 A contingency plan may be required when there is a rescheduling of the preparation of a  
4 FMP to balance the number of FMPs prepared in any particular year, or to accommodate  
5 management unit amalgamations. This type of contingency plan is normally a one, two, or  
6 three year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is prepared and  
7 approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation  
8 and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning  
9 proposal, will be conducted. The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part  
10 C, Section 3.2.2.2.

11  
12  
13 3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Forest Management Plan Renewal

14  
15 A contingency plan may be required if the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check  
16 that requires the preparation of a new FMP (Part C, Section 6.3). This type of contingency  
17 plan is normally a three-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the  
18 FMP is prepared and approved for implementation. (Figure A-1). The appropriate planning,  
19 public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as  
20 described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

21  
22 The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have  
23 not yet been implemented, and area selected from contingency area as appropriate. The  
24 planning of operations will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and  
25 documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

26  
27  
28 3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan

29  
30 The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF,  
31 including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as  
32 described in the endorsed planning proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in  
33 response to the MNRF review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for  
34 approval by the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional resources manager. If the  
35 MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager's and the regional resources  
36 manager's recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the contingency plan  
37 in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-5  
38 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan.  
39 Where a contingency plan is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit  
40 Instrument under the ESA Figure B-1B will be included in the contingency plan. The Forest  
41 Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated  
42 with electronically submitted contingency plan.

1 3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability

2

3 The approved contingency plan will be available to the public at the office of the sustainable  
4 forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons,  
5 organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the  
6 appropriate MNRF office to discuss the contingency plan.

7

8

1 **Figure C-5: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3 CONTINGENCY PLAN  
4 for the  
5 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

6  
7 [MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization] for  
9 the period from [date] to [date]

10  
11 I hereby certify that I have prepared this contingency plan, including the silvicultural ground  
12 rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, with the assistance of an  
13 interdisciplinary planning team, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest  
14 Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

15  
16 [R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

17  
18  
19 Submitted by: [name] [date]  
20 (where applicable) [Senior official of  
21 plan author's organization, if other  
22 than MNRF]  
23

24 I recommend that this contingency plan be approved for implementation, and certify that it  
25 has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning  
26 Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any  
27 relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this contingency plan  
28 has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this contingency plan,  
29 prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest  
30 management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

31  
32 Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

33  
34 [MNRF District Manager] [date]

35  
36 [MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

37  
38  
39 Approved by:

40  
41 [MNRF Regional Director] [date]

42  
43 Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]

1 **4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS**

2  
3 **4.1 Introduction**

4  
5 At any time during the implementation of a FMP, there may be circumstances that warrant  
6 preparation of a new FMP prior to the scheduled date.

7  
8  
9 **4.2 Proposal for Early Forest Management Plan Renewal**

10  
11 If preparation of a new FMP is warranted, a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable  
12 forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF and submitted to the MNRF regional director.

13  
14 The proposal will contain the following information:

- 15  
16 (a) the name of the management unit;  
17 (b) the period for the current FMP and the proposed implementation date for the  
18 new FMP;  
19 (c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the preparation of a new  
20 FMP;  
21 (d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment  
22 to the current FMP, a contingency plan); and  
23 (e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the LCC.

24  
25  
26 **4.3 MNRF Regional Director Review and Approval**

27  
28 The MNRF regional director will determine whether to proceed with the preparation of a  
29 new FMP, and notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district  
30 manager and the manager of MNRF’s Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests  
31 and Lands Policy Branch.  
32

## 5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS

### 5.1 Introduction

A FMP extension is an extension to the period of the current approved FMP. A FMP may be extended once, for a maximum of two years, if any planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal or maintenance in the approved FMP are not expected to be completed by the end of the FMP period. The two types of FMP extensions are a short-term FMP extension (i.e., up to three months), and a long-term FMP extension (i.e., more than three months and up to a maximum of two years). The FMP extension provision does not apply to a contingency plan.

### 5.2 Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

To initiate a FMP extension, a FMP extension proposal will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with MNRF. The FMP extension proposal will include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the FMP extension;
- (c) the type of extension (i.e., short-term or long-term), and the proposed period of the FMP extension;
- (d) a discussion of planning implications for the new FMP, including:
  - (i) identification of the FMPM to be used for the preparation of the LTMD;
  - (ii) identification of how the requirements of the applicable guides will be incorporated; and
  - (iii) the schedule of FMP preparation;
- (e) a brief discussion on the progress of implementation of the current approved FMP;
- (f) a description of the planned operations from the current MNRF approved FMP to be implemented during the period of the FMP extension;
- (g) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP extension, including supplementary documentation;
- (h) identification and description of the proposed approach for notification and consultation with known affected persons,
- (i) identification and description of the proposed approach for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation;
- (j) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (k) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional director.

1 The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the  
2 involvement and consultation of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of  
3 FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may  
4 have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and,  
5 where appropriate, accommodate.

6  
7

#### 8 5.2.1 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

9

10 The plan author will ensure that the FMP extension proposal is complete and accurate. The  
11 plan author will submit the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF regional resources  
12 manager.

13  
14

##### 15 5.2.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

16

17 The MNRF regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether  
18 preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the FMP extension  
19 proposal, if any, are necessary. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion  
20 that preparation of the proposed FMP extension should proceed, the MNRF regional  
21 resources manager will recommend approval of the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF  
22 regional director.

23

24 The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager's  
25 recommendation and determine if the preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If  
26 the MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP  
27 extension should proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest  
28 licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources  
29 manager, and the MNRF manager, Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests  
30 and Lands Policy Branch, once the proposal is approved.

31

32 Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the FMP extension  
33 will be prepared.

34  
35

##### 36 5.2.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

37

38 The MNRF regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether  
39 preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the FMP extension  
40 proposal, if any, are necessary. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion  
41 that preparation of the proposed FMP extension should proceed, the MNRF regional  
42 resources manager will provide First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC an  
43 opportunity to review the FMP extension proposal and provide comments. The MNRF  
44 regional resources manager will consider comments from First Nation and Métis

1 communities and the LCC, if any, when deciding whether or not to recommend approval of  
2 the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF regional director.

3  
4 The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager’s  
5 recommendation and determine if the preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If  
6 the MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP  
7 extension should proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest  
8 licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources  
9 manager, and the MNRF manager, Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests  
10 and Lands Policy Branch, once the proposal is approved.

11  
12 Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the FMP extension  
13 will be prepared.

### 14 15 16 **5.3 Preparation of a Forest Management Plan Extension**

17  
18 The FMP extension will be prepared in accordance with the proposal approved by the MNRF  
19 regional director. The FMP extension will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a  
20 registered professional forester.

21  
22 The FMP extension will incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not been  
23 completed. FMP extensions must be informed in part by the ESA, including any applicable  
24 habitat regulations and relevant policy direction.

25  
26 The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
27 and consultation for FMP extensions are described in Part C, Sections 7.7 and 8.7.

#### 28 29 30 **5.3.1 Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension**

31  
32 In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the approved proposal, the FMP  
33 extension documentation will include:

- 34  
35 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
36 (b) a statement that the current FMP (i.e., date) will be extended and that it will  
37 remain in force for the term of the extension;  
38 (c) a description of:  
39 (i) the planned operations being extended; and  
40 (ii) any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;  
41 and  
42 (d) a map of the primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and the harvest  
43 area that will be carried forward in the plan extension;  
44 (e) comments from the LCC;

- 1 (f) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation,  
2 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue  
3 resolution; and  
4 (g) the proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation.  
5  
6

### 7 5.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension 8

9 The FMP extension will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF in  
10 a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed  
11 proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNRF review, the  
12 MNRF regional resources manager will certify the FMP extension and recommend the FMP  
13 extension for approval by the MNRF regional director.  
14

15 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF regional resources manager's  
16 recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP extension in accordance  
17 with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-6 provides the  
18 format for the title, certification and approval page for a FMP extension. The FIM provides  
19 direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted  
20 FMP extension.  
21  
22

### 23 5.3.3. Forest Management Plan Extension Availability 24

25 The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the  
26 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
27 persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment  
28 at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP extension.  
29

**Figure C-6: Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSION

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization] for

the period from [date] to [date]

I hereby certify that this forest management plan extension has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

[R.P.F. seal]                      [Plan Author]                      [date]

Submitted by:                      [name]                      [date]  
(where applicable)                      [Senior official of  
plan author's organization, if other  
than MNRF]

I recommend that this forest management plan extension be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this forest management plan extension has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this forest management plan extension, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager]                      [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director]                      [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]

## 6.0 MID-PLAN CHECKS

### 6.1 Introduction

In the fourth year of implementation of a FMP, the plan author and MNRF will undertake a mid-plan check. A mid-plan check is an assessment of information (e.g., final year annual report) and changes (e.g., new policy) since the approval of the FMP to determine whether or not an amendment is required to the LTMD, the planned operations that have not yet been completed, or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

### 6.2 Preparation of a Mid-Plan Check

The plan author with the assistance of the MNRF will prepare a mid-plan check. In the preparation of a mid-plan check there will be consideration of:

- (a) land use policy direction;
- (b) approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
- (c) any applicable statement that has been published under subsection 11(8) of the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any relevant ESA policy direction;
- (d) inventories and information for species at risk;
- (e) independent forest audits and associated action plans and status reports for the management unit;
- (f) whether there are changes to First Nation and Métis communities' forest management-related concerns or First Nation and Métis values information;
- (g) changes to or new legislation, regulation and/or policy (e.g., new forest management guides) that are applicable to the management unit;
- (h) the management unit annual report for the last year of the previous FMP;
- (i) the summary of discussions of the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 2.1.3) from the first three management unit annual reports for the current FMP and any implications on the achievement of the LTMD;
- (j) results of any major natural disturbance that has occurred on the management unit since the FMP was approved;
- (k) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy documents developed for the applicable MNRF administrative region; and
- (l) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding resource use on the management unit).

A description of identified changes from the consideration of the above items will be prepared. The MNRF regional resources manager will consider the identified changes and

1 provide a recommendation with rationale as to whether or not an amendment is required to  
2 the FMP, or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

### 3 4 5 **6.3 Submission, Review and Approval**

6  
7 The plan author will ensure that the mid-plan check is complete and accurate. The plan  
8 author will certify and submit the mid-plan check to MNRF in accordance with the  
9 requirements of the FIM by March 31<sup>st</sup> of the fourth year of implementation of the FMP. In  
10 those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the  
11 management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author. Figure C-7 provides the  
12 format for the title, certification and approval page for a mid-plan check. The mid-plan check  
13 title, certification and approval page will note the forest information portal submission  
14 identifier.

15  
16 MNRF will undertake a review of the mid-plan check over a period of 30 days. Under the  
17 authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the required  
18 alterations, if any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the mid-plan  
19 check. If alterations are required, a 30-day period is provided for the preparation of a revised  
20 mid-plan check.

21  
22 During the 30-day period provided for the preparation of a revised mid-plan check, MNRF  
23 will provide the mid-plan check and any required alterations to First Nation and Métis  
24 communities for a 30-day period to review and provide comments. The MNRF regional  
25 resources manager will consider the input of First Nation and Métis communities and  
26 determine whether there are additional required alterations. Under the authority of the  
27 MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the additional required alterations, if  
28 any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the mid-plan check.

29  
30 MNRF will provide the mid-plan check, any required alterations, and associated MNRF  
31 regional resources manager's recommendation to the LCC. The LCC will prepare a brief  
32 statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the MNRF regional  
33 resources manager's recommendation. The statement will be provided to the MNRF and  
34 included in the mid-plan check.

35  
36 The MNRF regional resources manager will consider the statement of the LCC when finalizing  
37 the recommendation as to whether or not an amendment is required to the FMP or an  
38 unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

39  
40 If alterations were required, the plan author will certify and submit a revised mid-plan check  
41 to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. If required alterations have been  
42 addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF regional resources manager, the MNRF regional  
43 resources manager will sign the mid-plan check – title, certification and approval page, and  
44 recommend the mid-plan check for approval by the MNRF regional director. The MNRF

1 regional resources manager’s signature on the title and certification page (Figure C-7)  
2 certifies the acceptance of the mid-plan check and associated MNRF regional resources  
3 manager’s recommendation as to whether or not an amendment is required to the FMP or  
4 an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

5  
6 The MNRF regional director will review the mid-plan check and MNRF regional resources  
7 manager’s recommendation. After reviewing the mid-plan check and upon considering the  
8 recommendation of the MNRF regional resources manager the MNRF regional director will  
9 decide if:

- 10  
11 (a) the FMP does not require amendment; or  
12 (b) the FMP requires an amendment to:  
13 (i) the LTMD to address new legal, policy or guide requirements or a  
14 major natural disturbance that has occurred on the management unit;  
15 or  
16 (ii) the remaining planned operations in the FMP;  
17 or  
18 (c) a new FMP is required due to:  
19 (i) new legal, policy or guide requirements;  
20 (ii) the results of a major natural disturbance that has occurred; or  
21 (iii) in the opinion of the MNRF regional director, the continued  
22 implementation of the LTMD for the FMP will not provide for  
23 sustainability of the forest.

24  
25 The MNRF regional director will sign the title and certification page (Figure C-7). The MNRF  
26 regional director’s signature on the title and certification page approves the mid-plan check  
27 for the management unit.

28  
29 If the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check that requires an amendment to the  
30 FMP, the amendment will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 2.0.

31  
32 If the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check that requires a new FMP to be  
33 prepared, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF director, Crown Forests and Lands Policy  
34 Branch, and the MOECC director, Environmental Approvals Branch will be notified.

#### 35 36 37 **6.4 Mid-Plan Check Documentation**

38  
39 Mid-plan check documentation will include:

- 40  
41 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
42 (b) a brief introduction that identifies the purpose of the mid-plan check;  
43 (c) a description of any changes identified in the review of items listed in section  
44 6.2;

- 1 (d) a description and supporting rationale for any required amendments to the  
2 FMP, or the rationale for requiring an unscheduled FMP renewal;  
3 (e) the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation on whether or not  
4 an amendment to the FMP or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required; and  
5 (f) the LCC’s statement of general agreement or disagreement with the MNRF  
6 regional resources manager’s recommendation.  
7  
8

9 **6.5 Mid-Plan Check Availability**

10  
11 The approved mid-plan check will be available with the approved FMP at the office of the  
12 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
13 persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment  
14 at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the mid-plan check.  
15  
16

1 **Figure C-7: Mid-Plan Check - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

MID-PLAN CHECK  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
Plan Period from [date] to [date]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
Date, [date]

I hereby confirm that this mid-plan check is complete and accurate, and has been prepared to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal]                      [Plan Author]    [date]

I recommend that this mid-plan check be approved, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and the Forest Information Manual.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager]    [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director]    [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]

1 **7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

2  
3 **7.1 General**

4  
5 7.1.1 Public Notices

6  
7 The requirements for the contents of notices, the recipients of notices, and information  
8 availability will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, with any modifications MNRF  
9 district manager or MNRF regional resources manager considers necessary in the  
10 circumstances. Public notices are required for minor and major amendments, amendments  
11 to a LTMD, deemed amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions and mid-plan checks.  
12 Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in  
13 concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for,  
14 and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

15  
16 MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations.  
17 Media notices will be provided in advertisements in the local media.

18  
19  
20 Each public notice will:

- 21  
22 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;  
23 (b) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow  
24 for identification of the location of the management unit;  
25 (c) describe the subject matter of the amendment, contingency plan, FMP  
26 extension, or mid-plan check;  
27 (d) identify when and where information will be available; and  
28 (e) include the name of a contact person(s).

29  
30 Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation  
31 for minor amendments, major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, deemed  
32 amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions or mid-plan checks are described in Part C,  
33 Sections 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 7.6, 7.7 and 7.8.

34  
35  
36 7.1.2 Responses to Comments

37  
38 MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all  
39 written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the  
40 preparation of a minor amendment, a major amendment, an amendment to the LTMD, a  
41 contingency plan or a FMP extension that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. MNRF  
42 will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single  
43 response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond  
44 in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has

1 been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been  
2 considered.

### 3 4 5 7.1.3 French Language Services Act

6  
7 The *French Language Services Act, 1990* (FLSA) as amended from time to time, will govern  
8 the French language public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major  
9 amendments, amendments to a LTMD, contingency plans, FMP extensions, and mid-plan  
10 checks in designated areas under the act. The FLSA requirements for public consultation for  
11 FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply.

### 12 13 14 7.1.4 Environmental Bill of Rights

15  
16 Under the provisions of the EBR, as amended from time to time, MNRF will place registry  
17 information notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the  
18 public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation for a major amendment, an  
19 amendment to the LTMD, or a contingency plan.

20  
21 For a major amendment, a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR  
22 Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at stage one of public consultation.  
23 At stage two, an updated registry information notice will be placed on the EBR  
24 Environmental Registry.

25  
26 For an amendment to the LTMD, a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR  
27 Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at stage one of public consultation.  
28 At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated registry information notice will  
29 be placed on the Environmental Registry.

30  
31 For an administrative or a minor amendment to a FMP or contingency plan that has been  
32 designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument in respect of a species at risk, and the  
33 amendment has been assessed and would affect the requirements of the FMP or  
34 contingency plan that address ss. 18(1)(iii) of the ESA with respect to the species, a registry  
35 information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry for 30 days prior to  
36 amendment approval.

37  
38 For a contingency plan a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental  
39 Registry when the public notice is issued to advise the public of an opportunity to inspect the  
40 MNRF-approved contingency plan (Part C, Section 7.6).

41  
42 MNRF's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for  
43 policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for the preparation of these notices.

1 7.1.5 Issue Resolution

2  
3 If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, an amendment to  
4 a LTMD, a contingency plan, or a long-term FMP extension, the issue resolution process  
5 described in Part A, Section 2.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNRF considers  
6 necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be  
7 compressed).

8  
9  
10 **7.2 Minor Amendments**

11  
12 One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The  
13 purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise interested and affected persons  
14 and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the  
15 proposed operations that the minor amendment has been accepted by the MNRF district  
16 manager and to invite the public to review the minor amendment.

17  
18  
19 7.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

20  
21 A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval and implementation of the  
22 minor amendment. Direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who  
23 have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected  
24 by the operations that are proposed in the minor amendment.

25  
26 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
27 notice will contain:

- 28  
29 (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to  
30 advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);  
31 (b) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are  
32 raised;  
33 (c) a statement that the minor amendment will receive MNRF approval (by a  
34 specific date) if no concerns are raised;  
35 (d) an explanation of how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of  
36 the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*; and  
37 (e) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).

38  
39  
40 7.2.2 Information and Maps Available

41  
42 The minor amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and  
43 on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can  
44 arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the minor amendment.

1 **7.3 Major Amendments**

2  
3 7.3.1 General

4  
5 Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a  
6 major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

7  
8 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations,  
9 including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are  
10 proposed in the major amendment.

11  
12  
13 7.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

14  
15 Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
16 an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning  
17 of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30  
18 days before the information centre.

19  
20 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 21  
22 (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major  
23 amendment, including:  
24 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;  
25 (ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and  
26 proposed road locations/conditions; and  
27 (b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used  
28 in planning.

29  
30  
31 7.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

32  
33 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
34 notice will:

- 35  
36 (a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (30-day comment  
37 period);  
38 (b) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the  
39 *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*;  
40 (c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5); and  
41 (d) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.  
42

1 For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental  
2 notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First  
3 Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

4  
5 The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will  
6 attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

#### 7 8 9 7.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available

10  
11 Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be  
12 comparable to the information and maps available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section  
13 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

#### 14 15 16 7.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

17  
18 Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
19 inspect the MNRF-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon  
20 approval of the major amendment by the MNRF regional director.

#### 21 22 23 7.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

24  
25 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
26 notice will advise the public that there is an opportunity to make a written request by a  
27 specific date (30-day period) to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, Ministry of  
28 the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) for an individual environmental assessment  
29 of specific planned operations in the MNRF-approved major amendment (Part C, Section  
30 7.3.3.3).

#### 31 32 33 7.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available

34  
35 The MNRF-approved major amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable  
36 forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons  
37 and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the  
38 major amendment.

#### 39 40 41 7.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

42  
43 The opportunity to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC  
44 for an individual environmental assessment applies to major amendments to FMPs. For any

1 request for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in a  
2 major amendment the requirements described in Part A, Section 2.4.2 will apply.

## 3 4 5 **7.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction**

### 6 7 7.4.1 General

8  
9 Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in the preparation of an  
10 amendment to the LTMD. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

11  
12 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations,  
13 including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are  
14 proposed in the amendment to the LTMD.

### 15 16 17 7.4.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

18  
19 Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
20 review the proposed LTMD for the management unit. Information and maps will be available  
21 for public review and comment at the appropriate MNR offices, and the office of the  
22 sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the  
23 material. A summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be available for public  
24 distribution, upon request.

25  
26 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 27  
28 (a) for the public to review and comment on:  
29 (i) the proposed changes to the LTMD for the management unit;  
30 (ii) the areas eligible for harvest, and changes to the preferred areas for  
31 harvest operations for the remaining period of the FMP;  
32 (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new  
33 primary road, if any, that is required for the next 20 years; and  
34 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in  
35 planning.

#### 36 37 38 7.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

39  
40 In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part C, Section 7.1.1,  
41 the direct written notice will contain:

- 42  
43 (a) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the  
44 appropriate MNR offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:

- 1 (i) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and  
2 (ii) a summary map(s) of:  
3 • the preferred and optional harvest areas for the remaining period of  
4 the FMP; and  
5 • alternative corridors for each new primary road, if any, that is required  
6 for the next 20 years;  
7 (b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
8 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
9 date will be provided);  
10 (c) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the  
11 *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*;  
12 (d) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).  
13 (e) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.  
14  
15

#### 16 7.4.2.2 Information and Maps Available 17

18 Information and maps available for public review will be comparable to the information and  
19 maps available at stage two for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), with whatever modifications  
20 MNR considers necessary in the circumstances. The information and maps will be available  
21 at the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the  
22 public notice is issued.  
23  
24

#### 25 7.4.3 Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations 26

27 Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
28 an information centre. This information centre will be held after the planning of proposed  
29 operations is complete. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the  
30 information centre.  
31

32 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:  
33

- 34 (a) for the public to review and comment on the proposed operations for the  
35 amendment to the LTMD, including:  
36 (i) the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending  
37 operations;  
38 (ii) the proposed corridors for each primary and branch road, if any,  
39 proposed operational road boundaries, and proposed conditions on  
40 roads; and  
41 (b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used  
42 in planning.  
43  
44

1 7.4.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

2  
3 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
4 notice will:

- 5  
6 (a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (30-day comment  
7 period);  
8 (b) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the  
9 Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act;  
10 (c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5); and  
11 (d) include the names of the MNR, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

12  
13 For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental  
14 notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First  
15 Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

16  
17 The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will  
18 attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

19  
20

21 7.4.3.2 Information and Maps Available

22  
23 Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be  
24 comparable to the information and maps available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section  
25 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

26  
27

28 7.4.4 Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction  
29 Amendment

30  
31 Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public  
32 to inspect the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD. The public notice will be issued  
33 upon approval of the amendment by the MNRF regional director.

34  
35

36 7.4.4.1 Public Notice Requirements

37  
38 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
39 notice will advise the public that there is an opportunity to make a written request by a  
40 specific date (30-day period) to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an  
41 individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in the amendment to  
42 the LTMD (Part C, Section 7.4.4.3).

43  
44

1 7.4.4.2 Information and Maps Available

2  
3 The MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD will be available at the office of the  
4 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
5 persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to  
6 discuss the amendment to the LTMD.

7  
8  
9 7.4.4.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

10  
11 The opportunity to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC  
12 for an individual environmental assessment applies to changes to specific planned  
13 operations resulting from amendments to the LTMD of FMPs. For any request for an  
14 individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in an amendment to the  
15 LTMD, the requirements described in Part A, Section 2.4.2 will apply.

16  
17  
18 **7.5 Deemed Amendments**

19  
20 Upon acceptance of a deemed amendment, a public notice will be issued by MNRF to advise  
21 interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities of  
22 changes to planned operations as a result of the deemed amendment. Interested and  
23 affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an  
24 appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the deemed amendment.

25  
26  
27 7.5.1 Information and Maps Available

28  
29 The deemed amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and  
30 on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and  
31 First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF  
32 office to discuss the deemed amendment.

33  
34  
35 **7.6 Contingency Plans**

36  
37 7.6.1 General

38  
39 The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a contingency plan will be  
40 described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be  
41 consistent with the requirements for a FMP, and may vary having regard for the extent of  
42 public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal  
43 opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a contingency plan. For example, a  
44 contingency plan required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP will normally have

1 completed draft plan review (i.e., stage four of consultation). Public inspection requirements  
2 similar to stage five of consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.5) will apply, with appropriate  
3 modifications (e.g., the timeframe for public inspection may be compressed).

4  
5 For contingency plans prepared for other reasons, the extent of public consultation to date  
6 in the preparation of the FMP will determine the required public consultation.

#### 7 8 9 **7.6.1.1 Public Notice Requirements**

10  
11 Public notice requirements will be consistent with similar stages for a FMP, with appropriate  
12 modifications (e.g., the timeframe for notices may be compressed (15 days)).

#### 13 14 15 **7.6.1.2 Information and Maps Available**

16  
17 The contingency plan will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on  
18 the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can  
19 arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the contingency plan.

### 20 21 22 **7.7 Forest Management Plan Extension**

23  
24 One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation during the preparation of a  
25 FMP extension. The purpose of this consultation opportunity is to advise persons and  
26 organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to  
27 be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension  
28 that the FMP extension proposal has been accepted by the MNRF and to provide an  
29 opportunity to comment on the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP  
30 extension.

#### 31 32 33 **7.7.1 Public Notice Requirements**

34  
35 A direct written notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval of a FMP extension.  
36 The direct written notice will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified  
37 themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the planned  
38 operations to be implemented during the FMP extension.

1 7.7.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

2  
3 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
4 direct written notice will contain:

- 5  
6 (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to  
7 advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);  
8 and  
9 (b) an explanation of how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of  
10 the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*.

11  
12 Upon approval of the short-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a  
13 direct written notice to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having  
14 an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be  
15 implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP extension is available for  
16 inspection. The notice will normally be issued at least 90 days before operations are  
17 scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, review, approval, and public  
18 inspection of the annual work schedule.

19  
20 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
21 direct written notice will contain the following:

- 22  
23 (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended;  
24 and  
25 (b) the period of the FMP extension.

26  
27 In the case that the MNRF regional director denies the short-term FMP extension, the MNRF  
28 regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons and organizations who had  
29 identified themselves as having an interest in, or who were known to be directly affected by  
30 the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP  
31 extension has been denied.

32  
33  
34 7.7.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

35  
36 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.7.1.1, the  
37 direct written notice for a long-term extension will contain:

- 1 (a) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are  
2 raised;
- 3 (b) a statement that the long-term FMP extension will receive MNRF approval (by  
4 a specific date) if no concerns are raised; and
- 5 (c) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).  
6

7 Upon approval of the long-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a  
8 public notice to advise the public that the approved FMP extension is available for  
9 inspection. The notice will normally be issued at least 90 days before operations are  
10 scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, review, approval and public  
11 inspection of the annual work schedule.

12  
13 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the  
14 direct written notice and media notice will contain the following:

- 15  
16 (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended;  
17 and  
18 (b) the period of the FMP extension.  
19

20 In the case that the MNRF regional director denies the long-term FMP extension, the MNRF  
21 regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons and organizations who had  
22 identified themselves as having an interest in, or who were known to be directly affected by  
23 the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP  
24 extension has been denied.  
25  
26

### 27 7.7.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability

28

29 The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the  
30 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
31 persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to  
32 discuss the FMP extension.  
33  
34

## 35 7.8 Mid-Plan Check

36

### 37 7.8.1 Public Notice Requirements

38

39 Upon approval of a mid-plan check, MNRF will issue a media notice to advise the public that  
40 the mid-plan check has been completed, and is available on the Ontario Government  
41 website. In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section  
42 7.1.1, the media notice will:

- 43  
44 (a) indicate whether or not an amendment to the FMP will be prepared;

- 1 (b) provide a brief description of why the amendment is necessary; or
- 2 (c) indicate whether or not a new FMP will be prepared.
- 3

1 **8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND**  
2 **CONSULTATION**

3  
4 **8.1 Introduction**

5  
6 This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis  
7 communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in plan amendments, contingency plans,  
8 FMP extensions, or mid-plan checks.

9  
10 In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis  
11 community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains  
12 provisions for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension, the provisions of  
13 that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon,  
14 or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the  
15 requirements described in this section will apply.

16  
17 The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the  
18 involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan amendments, contingency plans,  
19 FMP extensions, or mid-plan checks is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any  
20 obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the  
21 duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

22  
23 For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or  
24 adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process  
25 that is not governed by the FMPM.

26  
27 For each notice required for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, a FMP extension, or a  
28 mid-plan check, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation and Métis  
29 community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the  
30 Indigenous language specified by the community. A notice will also be placed in the local  
31 Indigenous media where available.

32  
33  
34 **8.2 Minor Amendments**

35  
36 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and  
37 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
38 The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional  
39 requirements described in this section.

40  
41 The notice will contain an invitation to review and provide comments on the minor  
42 amendment. The notice will also include an invitation to review and provide comments on  
43 the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values

1 (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations proposed in  
2 the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

3  
4 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide  
5 the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates  
6 related to the MNRF-approved minor amendment.

7  
8 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for  
9 First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the minor amendment (Part A,  
10 Section 3.6.4).

### 11 **8.3 Major Amendments**

12  
13  
14 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and  
15 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
16 The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional  
17 requirements described in this section.

#### 18 19 20 **8.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations**

21  
22 The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine  
23 whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis community information centre.  
24 At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis community information centre  
25 will be provided.

26  
27 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.3.2, the  
28 notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- 29  
30 (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information  
31 centre, if such an information centre was requested by a First Nation or Métis  
32 community;
- 33 (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the major amendment; and  
34 (c) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the  
35 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A,  
36 Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the  
37 proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

38  
39 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
40 information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

1 8.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

2  
3 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.3.3 will apply.

4  
5 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide  
6 the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates  
7 related to the MNRF-approved major amendment.

8  
9 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for  
10 First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the major amendment (Part A,  
11 Section 3.6.4).

12  
13  
14 **8.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction**

15  
16 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and  
17 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
18 The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional  
19 requirements described in this section.

20  
21  
22 8.4.1 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

23  
24 In addition to the public notice requirements described in Part C Section 7.4.2, the notice to  
25 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- 26  
27 (a) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest operations which are  
28 proposed in the amendment to address identified First Nation and Métis  
29 values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection  
30 of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the  
31 proposed amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.3) ; and  
32 (b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in  
33 the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis  
34 values.

35  
36  
37 8.4.2 Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

38  
39 The MNR district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine  
40 whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information centre. At the  
41 request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information centre will be provided. The  
42 MNRF district manager will also provide the draft Report on Protection of Identified First  
43 Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the proposed amendment.

44

1 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.4.3, the  
2 notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- 3
- 4 (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre; if such  
5 an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis community;  
6 and
  - 7 (b) an invitation to review and provide comment on the draft updates to the  
8 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A,  
9 Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in  
10 the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis  
11 values.

12

13 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
14 information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

15

16

#### 17 8.4.3 Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction 18 Amendment

19

20 The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to provide the  
21 final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates  
22 related to the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD.

23

24 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for  
25 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the  
26 amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

27

28

### 29 **8.5 Deemed Amendments**

30

31 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and  
32 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
33 The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

34

35

### 36 **8.6 Contingency Plans**

37

38 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 7.6.1 will  
39 apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The  
40 notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

41

42 The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for  
43 First Nation or Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the  
44 contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the contingency plan

1 includes provisions for an information centre(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the  
2 First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First  
3 Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and  
4 Métis information centre will be provided.  
5  
6

### 7 **8.7 Forest Management Plan Extension**

8  
9 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 7.7.1 will  
10 apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation and Métis community. The  
11 notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.  
12

13 The planning proposal for the FMP extension will describe any additional requirements for  
14 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the  
15 FMP extension (Part C, Section 5.2). If the planning proposal for the FMP extension includes  
16 provisions for an information centre(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the First  
17 Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation  
18 and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis  
19 information centre will be provided.  
20

21 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for  
22 First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part A, Section  
23 3.6.4).  
24

### 25 26 **8.8 Mid-Plan Check**

27  
28 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.8.1 will apply, with  
29 modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will be  
30 provided to the First Nation or Métis community.  
31

32 A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for  
33 First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the mid-plan check (Part A, Section  
34 3.6.4).  
35

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1		
2		
3		
4	<b>PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS.....</b>	<b>5</b>
5	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>5</b>
6	Phase-in Provisions .....	5
7	<b>2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS .....</b>	<b>6</b>
8	Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	6
9	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern.....	7
10	Conditions on Regular Operations.....	7
11	Annual Work Schedules .....	7
12	Management Unit Annual Reports .....	7
13	<b>3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE.....</b>	<b>8</b>
14	3.1 Introduction .....	8
15	3.2 Text Content Requirements.....	8
16	3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page .....	8
17	3.2.2 Introduction .....	11
18	3.2.3 Harvest .....	11
19	3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection).....	11
20	3.2.5 Roads.....	12
21	3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction .....	12
22	Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction.....	13
23	3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern .....	13
24	3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning .....	14
25	3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	14
26	3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness.....	14
27	3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....	15
28	3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map .....	15
29	3.3 Information Products.....	16
30	3.3.1 Harvest Area.....	16
31	3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance .....	16
32	3.3.3 Roads.....	17
33	3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	18
34	3.3.5 Monitoring and Assessment .....	19
35	3.4 Submission, MNRF Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule.....	20
36	3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation .....	21
37	3.5.1 Revisions.....	21
38	3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments .....	21
39	3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern.....	22
40	3.5.3.1 Values that no Longer Exist.....	22
41	3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Values.....	22
42	3.5.3.3 New Values.....	23

1	3.5.3.4	Incorrectly Identified Values.....	23
2	3.5.4	Changes to Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits for Areas	
3		of Concern.....	23
4	3.5.4.1	Water Crossings.....	23
5		Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams.....	23
6		Changes to Crossing Conditions or Locations.....	24
7		Streams That Do Not Exist.....	24
8	3.5.4.2	Non-Water Crossings.....	25
9		Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Values.....	25
10		Changes to Conditions.....	25
11		Values that no Longer Exist.....	25
12		Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	26
13	3.5.5	Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation.....	26
14	3.6	Annual Work Schedule Tables.....	28
15	<b>4.0</b>	<b>PRESCRIBED BURNS.....</b>	<b>34</b>
16	<b>5.0</b>	<b>AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS.....</b>	<b>35</b>
17	<b>6.0</b>	<b>INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS.....</b>	<b>37</b>
18	6.1	Introduction.....	37
19	6.2	Development of Insect Pest Management Program.....	37
20	6.2.1	No Aerial Application of Insecticides.....	38
21	6.2.2	Aerial Application of Insecticides.....	38
22	<b>7.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION.....</b>	<b>40</b>
23	7.1	General.....	40
24	7.1.1	Public Notices.....	40
25	7.1.2	French Language Services Act.....	40
26	7.2	Annual Work Schedules.....	41
27	7.3	Prescribed Burns.....	41
28	7.4	Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects.....	42
29	7.5	Insect Pest Management Programs.....	43
30	7.5.1	General.....	43
31	7.5.2	Information Centre - Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program....	43
32	7.5.3	Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval.....	44
33	7.5.4	Issue Resolution.....	45
34	<b>8.0</b>	<b>FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION.....</b>	<b>46</b>
35	8.1	Introduction.....	46
36	8.2	Annual Work Schedules.....	46
37	8.2.1	Preparation of the Draft Annual Work Schedule.....	46
38	8.2.2	First Nation and Métis Community Notice Requirements.....	47
39	8.3	Prescribed Burns.....	48
40	8.4	Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects.....	48
41	8.5	Insect Pest Management Programs.....	48
42	8.5.1	Information Centre –Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program....	48

1	8.5.2 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval.....	49
2		
3		

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14

**LIST OF TABLES**

**AWS – 1    Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced .....29**  
**AWS – 2    Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned ..... 32**

**LIST OF FIGURES**

**Figure D-1:    Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page .....9**  
**Figure D-1B:    Annual Work Schedule - Title and Certification Page..... 10**  
**Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 27**

1 **PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

2  
3 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

4  
5 This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the  
6 preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules (AWS), and the  
7 detailed project planning required before the implementation of forest operations.

8  
9 The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan (FMP) and  
10 the scheduled operations in the AWS is the forest operations prescription. The requirements  
11 for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in section 2.0.

12  
13 An AWS identifies operations that are scheduled for implementation during the year. The  
14 requirements for the preparation, review, approval and viewing of an AWS are described in  
15 section 3.0.

16  
17 When prescribed burns, aerial herbicide or aerial insecticide projects are scheduled in an  
18 AWS, detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the planning requirements  
19 for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial  
20 herbicide and aerial insecticide projects.

21  
22 If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest  
23 management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of section  
24 6.0.

25  
26 Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation. Section 8.0 describes the  
27 requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the  
28 scheduling and/or planning of annual operations.

29  
30  
31 **Phase-in Provisions**

32  
33 Part D will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual  
34 (FMPPM), except as follows:

- 35  
36 • Annual work schedules prepared for the 2017-2018 operating year will be prepared in  
37 accordance with Part D, Section 3.0 of the FMPPM (2009)

## 2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and tending activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition (e.g., silvicultural ground rule (SGR)). A forest operations prescription will be developed before operations can commence. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring system. Forest operations prescriptions may also be operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern prepared to protect a value. Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may not be consistent with a SGR. Conditions on regular operations may also be prepared to protect important ecological features.

A forest operations prescription will be certified by a registered professional forester. If elements of the prescription (e.g., for an area of concern) are beyond the standard expertise of a forester, then certification by a suitably qualified person is also required. Forest operation prescription certification is provided through the certification of an AWS, as described in Part D, Section 3.2.1.

The complete forest operations prescription for a particular area of operations, or portion of an area of operations, is comprised of a combination of:

- (a) the assigned SGR or operational prescription for areas of concern in the FMP(s);
- (b) the appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) from the applicable SGR or operational prescription for areas of concern; and
- (c) the actual SGR and silvicultural treatments implemented on the area of operations, as identified in the applicable management unit annual report(s).

### Silvicultural Ground Rules

For most of the areas of operations, the SGRs in FMP-4 of the FMP are the forest operations prescriptions. FMP-4 will contain SGRs that apply to the applicable forest unit-ecosite combinations on the management unit. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the SGR identifies the suite of silvicultural treatments that will be used most frequently. However, any of the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the SGR may also be used.

During the preparation of the AWS, the SGR for an area of operations will be confirmed or changed based on the information available at that time. If the SGR is confirmed, an appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) will be identified in the AWS. If a change to the SGR is required, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected or a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate silvicultural treatments will be identified in the AWS.

1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

2  
3 The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern in a FMP may include  
4 modified operations developed to protect or manage specific values. These modified  
5 operations, developed to provide protection that are not consistent with a SGR, are deemed  
6 to be the forest operations prescription.

7  
8 In the preparation of the AWS, the operational prescription and conditions for areas of  
9 concern will be confirmed or changed to reflect updated values information. If a change to  
10 the operational prescription and/or conditions for areas of concern is required, an  
11 appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern from the FMP  
12 will be identified or a new operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern  
13 will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part  
14 C, Section 2.0. The appropriate operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern  
15 will be identified in the AWS.

16  
17  
18 Conditions on Regular Operations

19  
20 Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of a forest  
21 management guide (e.g., forest management guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the  
22 stand and site scales) these conditions apply to all forest operations prescriptions.

23  
24  
25 Annual Work Schedules

26  
27 The AWS will include information products for areas scheduled for access, harvest, renewal,  
28 tending and protection operations, and assessment in accordance with the requirements of  
29 Part D Section 3.0. Further direction on the requirements for information products is  
30 provided in the Forest Information Manual (FIM).

31  
32  
33 Management Unit Annual Reports

34  
35 The management unit annual report will contain the information products for areas of  
36 access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, in accordance with the  
37 requirements of Part E. Further direction on the requirements for information products is  
38 provided in the FIM.

## 3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

### 3.1 Introduction

An AWS will be prepared and approved for the management unit before any operations may proceed, and will be consistent with the FMP.

An AWS is normally required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1, but always ends on March 31. The AWS will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) for review and approval. The AWS will normally be submitted at least three months before April 1.

The AWS identifies operations that were previously planned and approved in the FMP, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition, planning and approval requirements for water crossings are identified in the AWS. Information products will be submitted with the AWS, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

If a species that could be affected by the forest operations authorized by an FMP is added to, or reclassified on, the SARO List such that it receives new protections under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* (ESA) the FMP and AWS will be assessed to determine whether the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied. If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are not satisfied, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0) and a revision to the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5) may be required.

Responsibility for the preparation of the AWS normally rests with the plan author. If a person other than the plan author produces the document, the plan author will supervise its preparation and certify the document. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

### 3.2 Text Content Requirements

#### 3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page

The first page of the AWS is a title, certification and approval page in the format of Figure D-1. The title, certification and approval page will be signed by the person who prepared the AWS, normally the plan author, the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, where applicable, and the MNRF district manager.

If the MNR district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that they prepared in the format prescribed in Part D, Figure D-1B.

**Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the one-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I/We hereby confirm that this annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the FIM, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]

Submitted by: [name] [date]  
(where applicable) Plan Author [or senior official  
of plan author's organization,  
if other than MNRF]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I have read this annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Approved by: [MNRF District Manager] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]

1 **Figure D-1B: Annual Work Schedule - Title and Certification Page**

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39

For Sections of the Annual Work Schedule not Prepared by the Plan Author

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRFP Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the one-year period from April 1, [date] to March 31, [date]

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the annual work schedule as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[name]	[title]	[sections]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[title]	[sections]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[title]	[sections]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

[name]	[title]	[sections]	[name]	[date]
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

1 3.2.2 Introduction

2

3 A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the AWS. The introduction will  
4 include a statement that conditions on regular operations identified in the FMP will be  
5 followed in the implementation of the AWS.

6

7

8 3.2.3 Harvest

9

10 The average annual available harvest area for the 10-year period of the FMP will guide the  
11 amount of area scheduled for harvest in an AWS. FMP-12 of the FMP is the source for this  
12 information. If sufficient available harvest area remains in the FMP, up to two years of  
13 average annual available harvest area by forest unit may be identified to provide flexibility  
14 for unforeseen circumstances. A discussion of the area scheduled for harvest, including  
15 fuelwood areas, will be provided in the text. The discussion will compare the actual area  
16 intended for harvest by forest unit during the year, to the total area identified by forest unit  
17 in the harvest information product. If greater than two years average annual available  
18 harvest area is required, the rationale for additional harvest area will be provided in the text.

19

20 If details of how stand level residual requirements will be addressed during the  
21 implementation of operations were not provided in the FMP, a description will be provided  
22 in the text.

23

24 If harvest is scheduled as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0)  
25 the text will refer to the applicable insect pest management program for details.

26

27

28 3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection)

29

30 A discussion of the area scheduled for renewal will be provided in the text. If applicable, the  
31 text will describe how the silvicultural program addresses any recommendations identified in  
32 the annual report(s) (Part E, Section 2.1.3 or Part E, Section 3.3). The text will identify the  
33 area to be:

34

- 35 (a) site prepared (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn);
- 36 (b) planted;
- 37 (c) seeded; and
- 38 (d) regenerated naturally.

39

40 A discussion of the area scheduled for tending activities (e.g., manual, mechanical, chemical,  
41 prescribed burn), spacing, pruning, pre-commercial thinning and improvement cutting will  
42 also be provided in the text.

43

1 If protection is scheduled during the year as a result of insect pest management planning  
2 (Part D, Section 6.0), the text will discuss the scheduled activities and reference the  
3 applicable insect pest management program for details.

4  
5 Prescribed burn plans (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for  
6 aerial applications of herbicides or insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0), are normally prepared  
7 during the year of the AWS. Following approval, these documents will form part of and be  
8 available with the approved AWS.

9  
10  
11 3.2.5 Roads

12  
13 A discussion of primary, branch and operational road construction will be provided in the  
14 text. The scheduled kilometres of primary and branch road construction will be provided. A  
15 discussion of roads scheduled to be decommissioned or have access controls established will  
16 also be provided in the text.

17  
18 A discussion of road construction or maintenance activities scheduled for the purpose of  
19 creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road will be provided in the text.

20  
21  
22 3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction

23  
24 Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water  
25 crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted with the AWS.

26  
27 Water crossings planned for the following year may be submitted with the AWS to provide  
28 MNRF an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the *Fisheries Act*. Water  
29 crossings submitted the year before construction are not approved with the current year's  
30 AWS approval.

31  
32 Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be  
33 implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the crossing is not required. In  
34 instances where a water crossing standard does not exist, an approved water crossing  
35 standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management zone related to  
36 fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF review is required.  
37 The decision framework in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and  
38 Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings will be  
39 used to assist in determining crossings that require an MNRF review.

40  
41 All water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year require the appropriate  
42 approval/notification forms to be completed, as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and

1 Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry  
2 Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

3  
4  
5 Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction

6  
7 For each new primary, branch or operational road water crossing, a 200 metre crossing  
8 location and conditions on construction will be identified. Conditions on construction will be  
9 consistent with the FMP (Part B, Sections 4.5.3, 4.5.4 and FMP-11).

10  
11 For water crossings that require an MNRF review, the 200 metre location and conditions on  
12 construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review  
13 of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, or operational considerations. Water  
14 crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings  
15 scheduled for replacement, will require approval as part of the AWS or the approval of a  
16 revision to the AWS.

17  
18 Each water crossing scheduled for construction or replacement and the associated  
19 conditions on construction will be identified in AWS-1.

20  
21 In an AWS, or any subsequent revisions to an AWS, the following information will be  
22 provided in AWS-1:

- 23  
24 (a) results of the review of the water crossing with respect to the *Fisheries Act*;  
25 (b) the description of the crossing structure;  
26 (c) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and  
27 mitigative measures; and  
28 (d) the recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the  
29 forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNRF, and  
30 where MNRF's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use.

31  
32  
33 3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern

34  
35 For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the  
36 conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with  
37 the FMP (Part B, Section 4.5). If the conditions have changed, the change will be  
38 documented in the text.

1 3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning

2  
3 For roads where MNRF’s management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, each  
4 water crossing will be examined using MNRF’s criteria for the removal of water crossings  
5 described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and  
6 site scales), to determine the appropriate decommissioning activities (e.g., removal of the  
7 crossing, establishment of a ford). Where an applicable approved water crossing standard  
8 identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the  
9 crossing is not required. Where a water crossing standard does not exist, where an approved  
10 water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management  
11 zone related to fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF  
12 review is required.

13  
14 All water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned in the current year require the  
15 appropriate approval/notification forms to be completed, as per the Ministry of Natural  
16 Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval  
17 of Forestry Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

18  
19 The conditions on removal (e.g., sediment control plan) for each water crossing will be  
20 documented in AWS-2. Approval of the water crossing removal will be provided as part of  
21 the approval of the AWS or the approval of a revision to the AWS.

22  
23  
24 3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

25  
26 A discussion of forestry aggregate pit rehabilitation will be provided in the text. The text will  
27 identify pits scheduled for rehabilitation and discuss the rehabilitation activities that will be  
28 conducted before pit closure.

29  
30 The text will also identify forestry aggregate pits where an application for a Category 9  
31 permit will be prepared.

32  
33  
34 3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

35  
36 The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures described in the FMP will apply to the  
37 entire management unit and all licensees. The applicable section of the FMP will be  
38 referenced in the AWS.

39  
40 The AWS will identify the resources available to carry out annual fire prevention and  
41 suppression operations. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in  
42 preparing:

43

- 1 (a) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression  
2 equipment that will be available and maintained on areas where operations  
3 are occurring; and  
4 (b) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers  
5 involved in forest operations.  
6  
7

8 3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment  
9

10 The annual component of the 10-year compliance strategy described in the FMP (Part B,  
11 Section 4.7.1) will be provided in the text. The annual component of the compliance strategy  
12 will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program that will be  
13 implemented, as described in the Forest Compliance Handbook, and be included as part of  
14 the AWS.  
15

16 If applicable, a discussion of the monitoring of exceptions to be undertaken by the  
17 sustainable forest licensee will be described in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.2).  
18

19 A discussion of the area scheduled for establishment assessment and performance  
20 assessment (Part B, Section 4.7.3) will be provided in the text.  
21

22 A discussion of the scheduled program for monitoring roads and water crossings will be  
23 provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.4). The discussion will include the methods to be  
24 used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if  
25 environmental or public safety concerns exist.  
26

27 If applicable, with respect to a species at risk, a discussion of the scheduled monitoring  
28 program for the species will be provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.5).  
29  
30

31 3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map  
32

33 An AWS summary map of the areas that are scheduled for operations will be prepared, and  
34 will be available for public distribution. The map will portray:  
35

- 36 (a) areas that are scheduled for harvest, renewal and maintenance operations;  
37 (b) areas available for fuelwood;  
38 (c) primary and branch roads to be constructed;  
39 (d) roads and road networks with access controls; and  
40 (e) roads and road networks to be decommissioned.  
41  
42  
43

1 3.3 Information Products

2

3 The forest operations that are scheduled will be provided in information products in  
4 accordance with the FIM.

5

6

7 3.3.1 Harvest Area

8

9 The areas scheduled for harvest will be identified (Part D, Section 3.2.3). The operational  
10 prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-11) associated with the areas  
11 scheduled for harvest will also be identified.

12

13 In the AWS for the first year of the FMP, areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1)  
14 will be identified.

15

16 If stand level residual requirements were identified in the FMP to be addressed during the  
17 implementation of operations, the area will be identified and portrayed in accordance with  
18 the direction in the applicable forest management guide.

19

20 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

21

- 22 (a) the harvest block identifier;
- 23 (b) the silvicultural system;
- 24 (c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected  
25 and accelerated);
- 26 (d) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern;
- 27 (e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
- 28 (f) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

29

30 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

31

- 32 (a) the harvest block identifier;
- 33 (b) the silvicultural system;
- 34 (c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected  
35 and accelerated);
- 36 (d) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern;
- 37 (e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
- 38 (f) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

39

40

41 3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance

42

43 The areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations  
44 during the year will be identified. The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of

1 concern associated with the areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations  
2 (Part B, FMP-11), will be identified.

3  
4 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and  
5 protection will identify:

- 6  
7 (a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g., site preparation, planting, seeding, tending);  
8 and  
9 (b) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

10  
11 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and  
12 protection will portray:

- 13  
14 (a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g., site preparation, planting, seeding, tending);  
15 and  
16 (b) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

### 17 18 19 3.3.3 Roads

20  
21 Primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and operational road boundaries where roads  
22 are scheduled to be constructed, will be identified. Roads and water crossings scheduled for  
23 maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning, will be identified.

24  
25 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction,  
26 maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

- 27  
28 (a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;  
29 (b) the operational road boundaries;  
30 (c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;  
31 (d) the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;  
32 (e) the 200 metre wide water crossing location for crossings to be constructed;  
33 (f) the roads that will be maintained;  
34 (g) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;  
35 (h) the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments  
36 of roads where new access controls are scheduled, and the type of access  
37 control activities;  
38 (i) water crossings to be replaced;  
39 (j) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of  
40 decommissioning activities; and  
41 (k) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

42  
43 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction,  
44 maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

- 1
- 2 (a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;
- 3 (b) the operational road boundaries;
- 4 (c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
- 5 (d) the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;
- 6 (e) the 200 metre wide water crossing location for water crossings to be
- 7 constructed;
- 8 (f) the segments of roads that have access controls implemented and the
- 9 segments of roads where new access controls are scheduled;
- 10 (g) water crossings to be replaced;
- 11 (h) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned; and
- 12 (i) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.
- 13
- 14

#### 15 3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

16 Existing forestry aggregate pits and new aggregate extraction areas will be identified.

17 Information products associated with each existing forestry aggregate pit will identify:

- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21 (a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;
- 22 (b) the pit opening date;
- 23 (c) pits scheduled for rehabilitation;
- 24 (d) the projected date for either pit closure or an application for a category 9
- 25 permit; and
- 26 (e) the areas of concern.
- 27

28 Information products for new aggregate extraction areas along existing forest access roads

29 will identify:

- 30
- 31 (a) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
- 32 (b) the areas of concern.
- 33

34 Information products associated with forestry aggregate pits and new aggregate extraction

35 areas will portray:

- 36
- 37 (a) the location and unique pit identifier for each existing forestry aggregate pit;
- 38 (b) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
- 39 (c) the areas of concern.
- 40

41 New forestry aggregate pits are not required to be identified in the AWS in which they will

42 be established. The information products associated with new forestry aggregate pits will be

43 updated annually (i.e., forestry aggregate pits opened during the current AWS will be

44 included in the AWS for the following year).

1 3.3.5 Monitoring and Assessment

2

3 The areas scheduled for regeneration assessment (i.e., establishment and performance)  
4 during the year will be identified.

5

6 Information products associated with areas scheduled for establishment assessment will  
7 identify:

8

9 (a) the area to be assessed;

10 (b) the silviculture ground rule for the area to be assessed; and

11 (c) the year of depletion.

12

13 Information products associated with areas scheduled for performance assessment will  
14 identify the stratum to be assessed (e.g., the forest unit and yield curve assigned after the  
15 establishment survey).

16

17

1 3.4 Submission, MNRF Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule

2

3 Prior to submission of the AWS to MNRF, the plan author will ensure the AWS:

4

5 (a) is complete and meets the structure and content requirements of Part D of  
6 this manual;

7 (b) calculations are correct;

8 (c) is edited for ease of understanding; and

9 (d) contains page numbers and line numbers.

10

11 The AWS will be certified by a registered professional forester. The person who prepared the  
12 AWS, normally the plan author, will sign the AWS title, certification and approval page  
13 (Figure D-1) to certify that the access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations in  
14 the AWS have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM, and are  
15 appropriate for the actual site conditions. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the  
16 AWS, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification  
17 and approval page. If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond  
18 the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an AWS (e.g.,  
19 water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the AWS that they prepared. The AWS  
20 title, certification and approval page will note the forest information portal submission  
21 identifier.

22

23 The AWS will normally be submitted to the MNRF for review and approval at least three  
24 months before its implementation that normally commences on April 1. The FIM provides  
25 direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted  
26 AWSs.

27

28 MNRF will undertake a review of the AWS over a period of 30 days commencing January 1<sup>st</sup>,  
29 or on the submission date if received after January 1<sup>st</sup>. Under the authority of the MNRF  
30 district manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations, if any, to the plan author who  
31 is responsible for the preparation of the AWS.

32

33 If alterations are required, a 30 day period is provided for the preparation of a revised AWS  
34 that will be submitted for approval. MNRF will ensure that the required alterations have  
35 been made. After the alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF  
36 district manager, the local citizens' committee (LCC) will be provided an opportunity to view  
37 the AWS.

38

39 Following the viewing by the LCC, the MNRF district manager will decide whether to approve  
40 the AWS. As part of the AWS approval, the MNRF district manager will approve each  
41 primary, branch and operational road water crossing that has had a *Fisheries Act* review  
42 completed. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with  
43 electronically submitted AWSs.

1 Following approval, the AWS will be available for viewing by the public and First Nation and  
2 Métis communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 for 15 days or until April 1<sup>st</sup>,  
3 whichever is longer. Operations may commence once the period of viewing is complete.

4  
5 The AWS and any subsequent revisions to the AWS will remain available for the one-year  
6 duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario  
7 Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and  
8 Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss  
9 the AWS.

### 10 11 12 3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

#### 13 14 3.5.1 Revisions

15  
16 Revisions to an AWS may be required during the year. Revisions will be consistent with the  
17 FMP, including any amendments to the FMP. If new areas of operations from the FMP are  
18 added during the year, a revision to the AWS will be required.

19  
20 Where a species that could be affected by forestry operations under a FMP receives  
21 protection under the ESA after the approval of the AWS, a revision to the AWS may be  
22 required to remove or change operations until the FMP is amended to satisfy the  
23 requirements of the ESA and supporting policies.

24  
25 A revision to an AWS will be certified by a registered professional forester, normally the plan  
26 author. The AWS revision title, certification and approval page will note the forest  
27 information portal submission identifier. The FIM provides direction for signing and  
28 submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWS revisions.

29  
30 The revision will be reviewed by MNRF, approved by the MNRF district manager or district  
31 supervisor, and will be available with the approved AWS. Figure D-2 provides the format for  
32 the title, certification and approval page for a revision. The FIM provides direction for signing  
33 approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWS revisions.

34  
35 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
36 3.5.5.

#### 37 38 39 3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments

40  
41 During AWS implementation, if a change to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled  
42 for harvest, renewal or tending operations occurs, and:

- 1           a)     the change is consistent with the SGR in the FMP, the change will be certified  
2                     by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable  
3                     forest licensee;
- 4           b)     the change is not consistent with the SGR in the FMP, an appropriate SGR  
5                     from the FMP will be selected and the change will be certified by the plan  
6                     author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;  
7                     or
- 8           c)     the change is not consistent with any of the SGRs in the FMP, a new SGR will  
9                     be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the  
10                    requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate SGR and silvicultural  
11                    treatment(s) will be certified by the plan author and the documentation  
12                    maintained by the sustainable forest licensee.

13  
14   The necessary documentation for changes to SGRs will be provided to MNRF, as described in  
15   Part D, Section 3.5.5.

16  
17

### 18   3.5.3   Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

19

#### 20   3.5.3.1   Values that no Longer Exist

21

22   During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that an identified value no  
23   longer exists. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of  
24   concern in the FMP will no longer apply. The area within the planned harvest area associated  
25   with the operational prescription for the area of concern may be harvested as per the  
26   applicable SGR subject to conditions in the operational prescription for the area of concern  
27   (e.g., bald eagle restrictions). An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be  
28   required.

29

30   The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
31   3.5.5.

32

33

#### 34   3.5.3.2   Incorrectly Located Values

35

36   During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a value in or adjacent to an  
37   area of operations may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP. The operational  
38   prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented in the actual location of  
39   the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

40

41   The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
42   3.5.5.

43

44

### 3.5.3.3 New Values

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified values may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the new value is available in the FMP, that operational prescription will be implemented. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

### 3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual value in an area of operations may be different than the portrayed value identified in the FMP (e.g., eagle nest instead of an osprey nest). If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the actual value is available in the FMP, the operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented for the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

## 3.5.4 Changes to Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits for Areas of Concern

### 3.5.4.1 Water Crossings

#### Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams

During the construction of a road, an unidentified stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP and AWS. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety, the applicable forms will be completed and submitted to MNRF in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings. Upon receipt of the applicable forms, the AWS will be deemed revised to include the water crossing and the requirements of Part D, Section 3.5.1 will not apply. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Where an approved water crossing standard does not exist in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.3.6) or where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, a new 200 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in a revision to the AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*,

1 will occur before the approval of the revision to the AWS. An amendment to the FMP will  
2 not be required. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in  
3 Part D, Section 3.5.5.

4  
5

6 Changes to Crossing Conditions or Locations

7

8 During the construction of a road, a change to the condition(s) on construction of a water  
9 crossing may be desired. If the change is consistent with the FMP (Part B, Section 4.5., FMP-  
10 11), the change to conditions on construction, will be identified in a revision to the AWS. If  
11 the change in conditions is not consistent with the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C,  
12 Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required. The review of the water crossing,  
13 with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1.

14

15 During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location may be desired. A  
16 new 200 metre wide location for the water crossing will be identified in a revision to the  
17 AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur in  
18 accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1. If the change to the water crossing location is not  
19 consistent with the FMP (e.g., road corridor, operational road boundary, area of operations,  
20 FMP-11), an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be  
21 required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur  
22 before the approval of the revision to the AWS.

23

24 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
25 3.5.5.

26  
27

28 Streams That Do Not Exist

29

30 During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a previously mapped stream  
31 does not exist. In such a situation, the 200 metre wide location and conditions on  
32 construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a  
33 revision to the AWS will not be required.

34

35 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
36 3.5.5.

37

38

39

1 3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings

2  
3 Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Values

4  
5 During the construction of a road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a previously unidentified  
6 value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a value may be  
7 different than the location portrayed in the FMP.

8  
9 If it is necessary to construct a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit within an area of  
10 concern for such a value, and applicable conditions on location(s) and/or construction are  
11 available in the FMP, those conditions will apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to  
12 the AWS will not be required. If no applicable conditions are available in the FMP, an  
13 amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

14  
15 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
16 3.5.5.

17  
18  
19 Changes to Conditions

20  
21 During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition  
22 on construction may be desired. If the change is consistent with the conditions on  
23 construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP will not be required. A  
24 revision to the AWS will be required if the condition(s) on construction was not included in  
25 the AWS.

26  
27 If a change to a condition(s) on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with  
28 the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C,  
29 Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

30  
31 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
32 3.5.5.

33  
34  
35 Values that no Longer Exist

36  
37 During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit it may be determined  
38 that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the conditions on the location(s)  
39 and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP  
40 or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

41  
42 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
43 3.5.5.

1 Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits

2  
3 During the use of an existing road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition  
4 may be required for a new value or if a value no longer exists. If the required change is  
5 consistent with an available condition for an area of concern identified in the FMP, an  
6 amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

7  
8 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
9 3.5.5.

10  
11  
12 3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

13  
14 For all revisions to an AWS, the necessary documentation will be prepared and, upon  
15 approval, will be available with the approved AWS.

16  
17 For all changes to operations that do not require an AWS revision, or changes that were  
18 deemed to revise the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5.4.1), updated information on the location and  
19 description of values that were previously unidentified or incorrectly portrayed, or that no  
20 longer exist, will be provided to MNRF, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

21  
22 For changes to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or  
23 tending operations the sustainable forest licensee will be responsible for the maintenance of  
24 records for forest operation prescriptions, including changes to silvicultural treatments  
25 during AWS implementation. Any necessary documentation will be provided in accordance  
26 with the requirements of the FIM.

27  
28 The updated operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and  
29 conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be provided in  
30 accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

31  
32 AWS revisions will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the  
33 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Changes to values  
34 information, operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and  
35 conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits, during AWS  
36 implementation will remain available for the duration of the FMP at the office of the  
37 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
38 persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment  
39 at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS revision.



- 1 3.6 Annual Work Schedule Tables
- 2
- 3 The tables in this section are required for each AWS.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: TO

4

5 **AWS – 1 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced**

6

Year of Construction	Water Crossing Identifier	Road Identifier	Water Crossing Structure	Culvert Diameter (mm)	Water Crossing Standard Identifier	Construction Conditions	Future Removal (Y/N)	Fisheries Act Review Completed (Y/N/NA)	Fisheries Act Review Results
A. Current Year									
B. Future Year									

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

### **AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced**

This table summarizes the scheduled water crossings to be constructed or replaced in the current year. Water crossings planned for the following year may be identified to provide MNRF an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the *Fisheries Act*. For each water crossing planned for the following year, this table should be completed to the extent reasonably possible. Each table entry represents a road crossing of areas of concern with a unique/common prescription. A source of information for this table is FMP-11.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and AWS year.

#### **Year of Construction:**

List individual water crossings by the anticipated year of construction (i.e., A. Current Year or B. Future Year).

#### **Water Crossing Identifier:**

Enter a unique code to identify each water crossing scheduled for installation or replacement.

#### **Road Identifier:**

Enter a unique name or code that the road can be identified by.

#### **Water Crossing Structure:**

Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) proposed.

#### **Culvert Diameter:**

Enter the culvert diameter from water crossing calculation. Enter not applicable (NA) if a culvert is not being installed.

#### **Water Crossing Standard Identifier:**

Enter the identifier from the FMP to be implemented. Enter not applicable (NA) if a water crossing standard is not being implemented.

#### **Construction Conditions:**

Enter conditions on the construction of the water crossing.

#### **Future Removal:**

If yes, enter Y and indicate the projected year of the water crossing removal. If no, enter N.

1 ***Fisheries Act Review Completed:***

2 Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (Yes/No/NA).

3

4 ***Fisheries Act Review Results:***

5 Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing, if completed (i.e.,

6 (i.e., Unacceptable (U) or Acceptable (A) likelihood of a *Fisheries Act* contravention).

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: TO

4

5 **AWS – 2 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned**

6

Water Crossing Identifier	Road Identifier	Water Crossing Structure	Water Crossing Standard Identifier	Decommissioning Activities/Conditions	<i>Fisheres Act</i> Review Completed (Y/N/NA)	<i>Fisheries Act</i> Review Results

7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35

**AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned**

This table summarizes the water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned. Each table entry represents a water crossing that will be decommissioned.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and AWS year.

**Water Crossing Identifier:**

For each water crossing to be decommissioned, enter the unique code to identify the crossing.

**Road Identifier:**

For each road, enter the unique name or code that the road can be identified by.

**Water Crossing Structure:**

Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) to be decommissioned.

**Water Crossing Standard Identifier:**

Enter the water crossing standard identifier from the FMP to be implemented. Enter not applicable (NA) if a water crossing standard is not being implemented.

**Decommissioning Activities/Conditions:**

Enter conditions on the decommissioning of the water crossing.

**Fisheries Act Review Completed:**

Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (Yes/No/NA).

**Fisheries Act Review Results:**

Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing removal, if completed (i.e., Unacceptable (U) or Acceptable (A) likelihood of a *Fisheries Act* contravention)

1 **4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS**

2  
3 For each prescribed burn scheduled during the year of the AWS, a prescribed burn plan will  
4 be prepared. MNRF’s Prescribed Burn Manual describes the requirements for the  
5 preparation, review and approval of prescribed burn plans. Prescribed burn plans will be  
6 submitted in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The FIM provides direction for  
7 signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted prescribed burns.

8  
9 First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC will be provided an opportunity to view the  
10 prescribed burn plan before its approval. The approved prescribed burn plan will form part  
11 of and be available with the AWS.

12  
13 The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved prescribed burn plan are  
14 described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.2.

15  
16 The prescribed burn proponent is responsible to ensure each prescribed burn area will be  
17 posted at least 14 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at  
18 main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English and, where  
19 applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request. The signs  
20 will indicate the scheduled date of the burn, and a telephone number of a contact person  
21 who can provide more information.

## 5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the AWS. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide.

The project description will include:

- (a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
- (b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
- (c) the rationale for the proposed treatment including a discussion of the alternatives to herbicides or insecticides considered;
- (d) the technical name, formulation and *Pest Control Products Act* registration number (i.e., PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
- (e) the proposed application rate;
- (f) the type of aircraft to be used (i.e., rotary, fixed wing);
- (g) the name of the project supervisor;
- (h) the locations of the treatment areas, identified on maps;
- (i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
- (j) a description of the results of the application of the MNR/ Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) Buffer Zones and their display on maps.

The project plan will include:

- (a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public and First Nation and Métis community(ies) (i.e., a communications plan);
- (b) an operations plan;
- (c) a safety plan; and
- (d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project will be approved by the MNR district manager, and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial herbicide projects.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be approved by the MNR regional director as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial insecticide projects.

1 The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved project description and  
2 project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.2. The  
3 Pesticide Permit approval from the MOECC will be available for inspection at the appropriate  
4 MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.  
5  
6 Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven  
7 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points  
8 of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is  
9 obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the  
10 completion of the project, normally removed by November 1 of the spray year, and will  
11 clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be  
12 provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous  
13 languages upon request. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying, the pesticide  
14 to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the telephone number of a  
15 contact person who can provide more information.  
16

## 6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

### 6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When a major insect pest infestation exists the MNRF regional director will determine if an insect pest management program will be developed. The insect pest management program will determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

### 6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When a major insect pest infestation exists, an insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team. The team will be comprised of MNRF, staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s) and a representative(s) of the LCC(s). The representative(s) of the LCC(s) will be a member(s) from the LCC(s) in the affected area.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed on maps, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

- (a) no treatment;
- (b) accelerated harvest;
- (c) redirected harvest;
- (d) salvage harvest;
- (e) prescribed burns;
- (f) the use of insecticides;
- (g) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
- (h) appropriate combinations of options (a) to (g).

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, MNRF will give preference to such alternatives. Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
- (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management;
- (c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option; and
- (d) an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.

1 A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the  
2 management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be  
3 documented.

4  
5 The MNRF regional director will notify the MOECC director that the planning process for an  
6 insect pest management program has been initiated and shall provide the following:

- 7  
8 (a) the reason(s) for the program;  
9 (b) a description of the nature and extent of the major insect pest infestation;  
10 (c) the target insect;  
11 (d) the duration of the program;  
12 (e) a discussion of the range of management options that shall be considered and  
13 the timing and rationale for those options;  
14 (f) if insecticide is considered for application, the active ingredient and product  
15 name; and  
16 (g) the MNRF and LCC contact information.

17  
18  
19 6.2.1 No Aerial Application of Insecticides

20  
21 The MNRF will review the selected course of action and rationale. If the MNRF regional  
22 director agrees with the specific course of action, the MNRF regional director will approve  
23 the insect pest management program. If the approved insect pest management program  
24 involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the MNRF district manager  
25 will determine if an amendment to a FMP(s) is required. If so, the planning requirements for  
26 amendments to FMPs will apply (Part C, Section 2.0).

27  
28  
29 6.2.2 Aerial Application of Insecticides

30  
31 If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project  
32 proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in  
33 accordance with the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
34 community involvement and consultation described in Part D, Sections 7.5 and 8.3. After the  
35 15 day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each  
36 aerial insecticide project and submitted to MNRF for regional director approval, in  
37 accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0. The FIM provides direction for  
38 signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted insecticide pest  
39 management programs.

40  
41 As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description  
42 of how MNRF's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of*  
43 *Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development

- 1 of the insect pest management program will be produced, in the form of an SEV
- 2 consideration document.
- 3

## 7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

### 7.1 General

#### 7.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for AWSs, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations. Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

The AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

Insect pest management programs will be available at the appropriate MNRF office(s) and on the Ontario Government website.

#### 7.1.2 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act*, as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 2.3.2 will apply to public notices for AWSs, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for French language public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

#### 7.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights

The requirements of the EBR apply to insect pest management programs, as described in Part D, Section 7.5.1.

1 7.2 Annual Work Schedules  
2

3 Upon approval of the AWS, at least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a  
4 public notice will be issued by MNRF to advise the public that the approved AWS is available  
5 for viewing. A single notice may be issued for multiple AWSs.  
6

7 A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be  
8 directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the AWS, and in  
9 particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in  
10 specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly  
11 affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas  
12 scheduled for operations.  
13

14 The public notice will:

- 15
- 16 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- 17 (b) identify where the AWS will be available for viewing;
- 18 (c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow  
19 for identification of the management unit;
- 20 (d) indicate the opportunities for fuelwood;
- 21 (e) indicate the opportunities for tree planting jobs;
- 22 (f) identify that an AWS summary map is available; and
- 23 (g) include the name of a contact person and contact information.  
24

25 The following information and maps will be available when the public notice is issued:

- 26
- 27 (a) the approved AWS; and
- 28 (b) an AWS summary map that portrays the operations that are scheduled.  
29

30 The approved AWS (and any subsequent revisions to the AWS) will remain available for  
31 public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario  
32 Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons  
33 and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the  
34 AWS.  
35

36

37 7.3 Prescribed Burns  
38

39 For prescribed burns, a public notice will be issued by the MNRF at least 30 days before the  
40 anticipated date of the burn to advise the public that the prescribed burn plan is available  
41 for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple prescribed burns on the  
42 management unit.  
43

1 A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to known affected persons and  
2 interested persons who have requested notice of prescribed burns.

3  
4 The public notice will:

- 5  
6 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;  
7 (b) identify where the prescribed burn plan will be available for inspection;  
8 (c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow  
9 for identification of the management unit; and  
10 (d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

11  
12 Additional consultation responsibilities for the proponent are identified in MNRF's  
13 Prescribed Burn Manual.

14  
15 The approved prescribed burn plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of  
16 the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year  
17 duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an  
18 appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the prescribed burn plan.

19  
20 7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

21  
22 For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, MNRF will issue a public notice at least 30 days  
23 before the anticipated date of application to advise the public that the approved project  
24 description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project is available for  
25 public inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple aerial herbicide or insecticide  
26 projects on the management unit.

27  
28 A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided at least 30 days before the  
29 anticipated date of application to landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the  
30 proposed treatment area. The direct written notice will also be provided to First Nation and  
31 Métis communities and stakeholders who may be directly affected (e.g., tourism businesses  
32 with bear management areas).

33  
34 The public notice will:

- 35  
36 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;  
37 (b) identify where information will be available for inspection;  
38 (c) identify the anticipated date(s) of aerial herbicide or insecticide application;  
39 (d) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow  
40 for identification of the management unit; and  
41 (e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.  
42

1 An additional notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be issued by the  
2 MNRF at least seven days before the scheduled date of application, normally in the form of  
3 advertisements in the local media.

4  
5 The approved aerial herbicide or insecticide project description and project plan will remain  
6 available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the  
7 Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected  
8 persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with staff at the appropriate MNRF  
9 office to discuss the aerial herbicide or insecticide projects.

10

11

## 12 7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

13

### 14 7.5.1 General

15

16 When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that  
17 involves the aerial application of insecticides, one formal opportunity will be provided for  
18 public consultation during the preparation of specific project proposals.

19

20 Under the provisions of the EBR, as amended from time to time, MNRF will place Registry  
21 Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the  
22 public notice is issued. MNRF's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry  
23 Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for the preparation  
24 of these notices.

25

26

### 27 7.5.2 Information Centre - Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

28

29 The public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
30 an information centre. Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected  
31 persons and organizations. The purpose of the information centre is for the public to review,  
32 and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project  
33 proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at  
34 least 15 days before the information centre.

35

36 The notice will include:

37

- 38 (a) the name of the MNRF district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
- 39 (b) when and where information will be available;
- 40 (c) a map of the MNRF district(s) where the insect pest management program is  
41 being prepared;
- 42 (d) the name of a contact person and contact information.

- 1 (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15 day  
2 review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date  
3 will be provided);
- 4 (f) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under  
5 relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*  
6 *Act*; and
- 7 (g) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section  
8 7.5.4).

9  
10 The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

- 11
- 12 (a) insect infestation map(s) and population forecasts;
- 13 (b) maps of areas eligible for insect pest management;
- 14 (c) the current version of the values maps for the affected management unit(s) in  
15 the MNRF district(s);
- 16 (d) the evaluation of management options;
- 17 (e) the selected course of action, with reasons;
- 18 (f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated  
19 maps;
- 20 (g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same  
21 insect species in the previous year (if any); and
- 22 (h) a comment form.

23  
24 Representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management  
25 program, will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

26  
27 There will be a period of 15 days from the date of the information centre for the public to  
28 provide comments to the MNRF.

29  
30 MNRF will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions  
31 received from any person or organization during the preparation of an insect pest  
32 management program. MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or  
33 organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter.  
34 The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal  
35 comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the  
36 comments and submissions have been considered.

### 37 38 39 7.5.3 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval

40  
41 Upon approval of an insect pest management program by the MNRF regional director, MNRF  
42 will issue a media notice. The public notice will include:

- 43
- 44 (a) a statement that the insect pest management program has been approved;

- 1 (b) the name of the MNR district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
- 2 (c) when and where information will be available;
- 3 (d) a map of the MNR district(s) for which the insect pest management program
- 4 is being prepared; and
- 5 (e) the name of a contact person and contact information.

6

7 This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that will be issued at  
8 least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the  
9 anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

10

11

#### 12 7.5.4 Issue Resolution

13

14 If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the MNR  
15 regional director stage of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.2 will  
16 apply.

17

## 8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION

### 8.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in the planning of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for an AWS, prescribed burn, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in the local Indigenous media where available.

### 8.2 Annual Work Schedules

#### 8.2.1 Preparation of the Draft Annual Work Schedule

Following completion of the draft AWS, and no later than the date of submission of the draft AWS to MNRF (normally submitted on January 1<sup>st</sup> annually), the sustainable forest licensee will provide each First Nation and Métis community a copy of the draft AWS and invite the

1 community to participate in a meeting to discuss the draft AWS. Communities will have 30  
2 days to review and provide comments and, if the community expresses an interest,  
3 participate in a meeting. The sustainable forest licensee may invite the MNRF to attend the  
4 meeting(s). The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the operations with First Nation and  
5 Métis communities and provide communities the opportunity to identify any updated First  
6 Nation and Métis values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities  
7 and that may be affected by the forest operations, including the application of herbicides  
8 (e.g., ground application, aerial application).  
9

10 The sustainable forest licensee will prepare a summary of First Nation and Métis community  
11 involvement on the draft AWS. The summary will include:

- 12
- 13 (a) a summary of communications with each First Nation and Métis community,  
14 the dates of any meeting(s), and the primary contact person for each First  
15 Nation and Métis community;
- 16 (b) a summary of comments and any updated values from each First Nation and  
17 Métis community; and
- 18 (c) a summary of how the sustainable forest licensee considered First Nation and  
19 Métis community comments and any updated values in the revised AWS.  
20

21 The sustainable forest licensee will submit the summary described above to MNRF, and  
22 provide a copy to the First Nation and Métis communities, at the time of revised AWS  
23 submission.  
24

25 If a First Nation or Métis community identifies any updated values that are of importance to  
26 the First Nation or Métis community and that may be affected by the forest operations,  
27 MNRF will invite the community to review and provide comments on the draft updates to  
28 the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).  
29 The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation and Métis community to provide the  
30 updated final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values.  
31  
32

### 33 8.2.2 First Nation and Métis Community Notice Requirements 34

35 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Section 7.1.1 and  
36 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
37 The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

- 38
- 39 (a) an invitation to develop a customized consultation approach and specify that the  
40 customized consultation approach may include some or all of the elements listed in Part  
41 A, Section 3.4.  
42  
43  
44

1 8.3 Prescribed Burns

2  
3 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1, 7.3  
4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The  
5 notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

- 6  
7 (a) a map(s) of the prescribed burn area(s) containing sufficient detail to allow for  
8 identification of individual prescribed burn area(s).

9  
10  
11 8.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

12  
13 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1  
14 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis  
15 community. The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

- 16  
17 (a) a map(s) of where aerial herbicide or insecticide application is planned,  
18 containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual treatment  
19 area(s).

20  
21  
22 8.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

23  
24 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1  
25 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis  
26 community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the  
27 additional requirements described in this section.

28  
29  
30 8.5.1 Information Centre –Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

31  
32 The MNR district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to  
33 determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information centre. At  
34 the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information centre will be provided.

35  
36 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2 and  
37 modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will also  
38 contain:

- 39  
40 (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre; if such  
41 an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis community;  
42 and

1           (b)     an invitation to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest  
2                   management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial  
3                   insecticide projects.  
4

5     A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
6     information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.  
7

8

9     8.5.2   Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval

10

11     The public notice requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with  
12     modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
13

13

1

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1			
2			
3	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>		<b>4</b>
4	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>		<b>4</b>
5	Phase-in Provisions .....		4
6	<b>2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS.....</b>		<b>6</b>
7	2.1 Annual Report Text .....		6
8	2.1.1 Title and Certification Page .....		6
9	2.1.2 Introduction.....		6
10	2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations.....		6
11	2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment .....		7
12	2.1.5 Annual Report Summary Map.....		7
13	2.2 Annual Report Tables.....		8
14	2.2.1 Wood Utilization.....		8
15	2.2.2 Renewal Support .....		8
16	2.2.3 Expenditures.....		8
17	2.2.4 Pesticide Use .....		8
18	2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections .....		10
19	2.3 Prescribed Burns .....		10
20	2.4 Information Products.....		10
21	2.4.1 Harvest .....		10
22	2.4.2 Natural Disturbances.....		11
23	2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance.....		11
24	2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings.....		12
25	2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits .....		12
26	2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration.....		12
27	<b>3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL</b>		
28	<b>REPORTS.....</b>		<b>14</b>
29	3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis .....		14
30	3.1.1 Harvest Area .....		14
31	3.1.2 Harvest Volume .....		14
32	3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance.....		15
33	3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration.....		15
34	3.1.5 Forest Condition .....		15
35	3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species .....		15
36	3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....		15
37	3.1.8 Mid-Plan Check.....		16
38	3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances .....		16
39	3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities.....		16
40	3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling.....		16
41	3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement.....		17
42	3.5.1 Risk Assessment .....		18

1	3.6	Determination of Sustainability.....	18
2	3.7	Considerations for the Mid-Plan Check.....	19
3	<b>4.0</b>	<b>SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....</b>	<b>20</b>
4	4.1	All Annual Reports .....	20
5	4.2	Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports.....	20
6	<b>5.0</b>	<b>MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES.....</b>	<b>22</b>
7			

**LIST OF TABLES – All Annual Reports**

1

2

3 **AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee ..... 23**

4 **AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill ..... 25**

5 **AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support ..... 27**

6 **AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures ..... 30**

7 **AR-5: Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown**

8 **Forests..... 33**

9 **AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and**

10 **Remedies Applied ..... 35**

11 **AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area..... 37**

12 **AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume ..... 39**

13 **AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations..... 41**

14 **AR-10: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive**

15 **Forest ..... 44**

16 **AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ..... 47**

17 **AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit) ..... 49**

18 **AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield)..... 51**

19 **AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment ..... 54**

20 **AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance ..... 56**

21 **AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 58**

**LIST OF FIGURES**

22

23

24

25

26

27 **Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page ..... 9**

28

1 **PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

2  
3 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

4  
5 This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting.  
6 An annual report will be prepared for each one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31) of the  
7 forest management plan (FMP), and will be submitted by the following November 15. The  
8 annual report will be certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan  
9 author. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on  
10 the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee will assign the plan author.

11  
12 Additional requirements for reports on plan implementation for Far North management  
13 units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part F of this  
14 Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM).

15  
16 Information products associated with all operations, including road and water crossing  
17 construction and decommissioning, implemented during the year will be submitted in  
18 accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual (FIM).

19  
20 Annual report tables AR-1 to AR-6 are prepared for all annual reports. Annual report tables  
21 AR-7 to AR-16 are prepared for the year five annual report and the annual report for the  
22 final year of implementation of the FMP (i.e., final year annual report).

23  
24 The additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports are described in  
25 Part E, Section 3.0.

26  
27  
28 **Phase-in Provisions**

29  
30 Part E, Section 2.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM, except as follows:

- 31  
32 • annual reports submitted for the one year period of April 1, 2016 – March 31, 2017 will  
33 be prepared in accordance with Part E, Section 2.0 of the FMPM (2009).

34  
35 Part E, Section 3.0 of this FMPM will apply to year five annual reports for forest management  
36 plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

37  
38 Year three annual reports prepared for the one year period of April 1, 2019 – March 31,  
39 2020 or April 1, 2020 – March 31, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM  
40 (2009).

41  
42 Year seven annual reports prepared for the one year period of April 1, 2016 – March 31,  
43 2017 will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009).

1 Commencing with year seven annual reports for the one year period of April 1, 2017 –  
2 March 31, 2018, year seven annual reports will be prepared in accordance with the year five  
3 annual report requirements of this FMPM, to the extent reasonably possible.  
4  
5 Part E, Section 3.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM to final year annual  
6 reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM. For forest  
7 management plans prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009), Part E, Section 3.0 of this  
8 FMPM will apply, to the extent reasonably possible, to final year annual reports,  
9 commencing with those for the one year period of April 1, 2017 – March 31, 2018.  
10

## 2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

### 2.1 Annual Report Text

#### 2.1.1 Title and Certification Page

The first page of the annual report is a title and certification page in the format of Figure E-1. This page identifies that the annual report has been prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. The annual report title and certification page will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The annual report title and certification page will note the forest information portal submission identifier.

#### 2.1.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual report, and identify if the annual report is a year five or final year annual report. The text will identify the relevant MNRF field, district(s) and region(s), and the sustainable forest licensee.

#### 2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations

A discussion of the implementation of harvest and road construction operations will address:

- (a) the progress towards harvest of the planned harvest area and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply;
- (b) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of road construction and maintenance, and any related concerns; and
- (c) the progress towards utilization of the volume associated with the planned harvest area (AR-1) and achievement of the planned volume for each mill (AR-2), and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply.

A discussion of the implementation of renewal and tending operations will address:

- (a) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of renewal and tending, and any related concerns; and
- (b) the progress towards the target forest condition (i.e., distribution of forest units) from the long-term management direction (LTMD) (AR-12 from the most recent enhanced annual report), and any adjustments required to the silvicultural program due to variances.

1 The text will include a description of any silvicultural trial areas undertaken.

2

3

4 2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment

5

6 The text will also include a discussion of:

7

8 (a) any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions)  
9 that have affected the implementation of the FMP, and if applicable, the  
10 potential for a FMP extension or a contingency plan;

11 (b) the monitoring of roads and water crossings, including the effectiveness of  
12 access controls, and any related concerns;

13 (c) instances of non-compliance (AR-6), including:

14 (i) the type(s) of non-compliance that occurred;

15 (ii) the cause(s) of those occurrences;

16 (iii) the remedies applied; and

17 (iv) how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest  
18 operations to minimize instances of non-compliance;

19 (d) the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2), if any was undertaken,  
20 and any related concerns;

21 (e) the monitoring of a forest-related species at risk or their habitat (Part B,  
22 Section 4.7.5), if any was undertaken, and any related concerns;

23 (f) the progress towards completing the planned assessments of regeneration  
24 (i.e., establishment (FMP-20) and performance), and any related concerns;  
25 and

26 (g) the progress towards completing the recovery of productive land (e.g., slash  
27 piles, chipper piles, landings, and roads decommissioned), and any related  
28 concerns.

29

30

31 2.1.5 Annual Report Summary Map

32

33 An annual report summary map will be prepared. The map will portray:

34

35 (a) areas harvested;

36 (b) areas of natural disturbance;

37 (c) areas where renewal and tending operations occurred;

38 (d) roads constructed;

39 (e) water crossings constructed;

40 (f) roads decommissioned; and

41 (g) water crossings decommissioned.

42

43

1 **2.2 Annual Report Tables**

2

3 2.2.1 Wood Utilization

4

5 The annual report will include a table (AR-1) of harvest volume utilized by licensee, harvest  
6 area, product, species and harvest volume, and a table (AR-2) of harvest volume utilized by  
7 mill.

8

9

10 2.2.2 Renewal Support

11

12 The annual report will include a table (AR-3) of information on seed collection, seed use and  
13 trees planted.

14

15

16 2.2.3 Expenditures

17

18 The annual report will include a table (AR-4) of information on expenditures for renewal,  
19 tending and protection activities from the Forest Renewal Trust, Special Purpose Account,  
20 and Forestry Futures Trust.

21

22

23 2.2.4 Pesticide Use

24

25 The annual report will include a table (AR-5) of information for ground and aerial pesticide  
26 projects conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately  
27 preceding the due date of the annual report), required by Ministry of the Environment and  
28 Climate Change (MOECC). If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a  
29 separate report that describes the incident will be prepared and included in the annual  
30 report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a separate report that  
31 describes the details of the complaint will be prepared and included in the annual report.

32

33 If pesticide application operations occur or are anticipated to occur beyond the November  
34 15 submission requirement of the annual report, an update to the annual report will be  
35 submitted as soon as possible.

36



1 2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections

2  
3 The annual report will include a table (AR-6) that summarizes forest operations inspections.

4  
5  
6 **2.3 Prescribed Burns**

7  
8 Post-burn reports, as required by MNRF’s Prescribed Burn Manual, will be prepared and  
9 submitted with the annual report.

10  
11  
12 **2.4 Information Products**

13  
14 The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be  
15 provided in information products in accordance with the FIM.

16  
17  
18 2.4.1 Harvest

19  
20 Areas of harvest operations will be reported. Information products associated with areas of  
21 harvest will identify:

- 22  
23 (a) the harvest block identifier;  
24 (b) the forest unit;  
25 (c) the age class or stage of management;  
26 (d) the silvicultural ground rule (SGR), if applicable;  
27 (e) the target forest unit;  
28 (f) the target yield;  
29 (g) the silvicultural system;  
30 (h) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected,  
31 accelerated, road right of way);  
32 (i) the harvest method;  
33 (j) the logging method; and  
34 (k) if the harvest is a silvicultural trial.

35  
36 The areas of bridging operations planned to be harvested will be identified in the annual  
37 report for the final year of the FMP, and will be associated with the available harvest area of  
38 that FMP. The area of bridging operations conducted during the first year of a FMP will be  
39 reported in the year one annual report but will be counted against the available harvest area  
40 for the previous FMP.

41  
42 Areas harvested in two passes will be reported in two annual reports. The first-pass harvest  
43 area will be reported as regular harvest area and will contribute to the achievement of

1 available harvest area. The second-pass harvest area will be reported in a subsequent annual  
2 report and will not contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area.

#### 3 4 5 2.4.2 Natural Disturbances

6  
7 The report of natural disturbances will contain net natural disturbance areas for stand  
8 replacing events (e.g., fire, blowdown). MNRF will provide information on the gross natural  
9 disturbance area to the sustainable forest licensee, as per the requirements of the FIM. The  
10 sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance area and determine  
11 the net natural disturbance area.

12  
13 The information products associated with the net natural disturbance area will identify:

- 14  
15 (a) the forest unit;  
16 (b) the age class;  
17 (c) the estimated conifer and hardwood volume; and  
18 (d) the natural disturbance type (e.g., blowdown, disease, drought, fire, insects).  
19  
20

#### 21 2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance

22  
23 Area of renewal, tending and protection operations will be reported.

24  
25 Information products associated with areas of renewal, tending and protection will identify:

- 26  
27 (a) the treatment category (e.g., regular, retreatment, supplemental);  
28 (b) the regeneration treatment (e.g., planting, seeding, natural);  
29 (c) the site preparation treatment (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn,  
30 slash and chip pile management);  
31 (d) the tending treatment (e.g., cleaning, spacing, pre-commercial thinning,  
32 improvement cutting);  
33 (e) the protection treatment (e.g., harvest, manual, insecticide); and  
34 (f) if the treatment(s) is a silvicultural trial.  
35

36 Areas harvested under the selection silvicultural system that are predominantly non-  
37 commercial improvement cuts will be identified as natural under regeneration treatment.  
38 The areas will also be identified as improvement cutting under tending.

39  
40 Areas planned for natural regeneration will normally be reported in the year that the  
41 disturbance (i.e., harvest, natural) occurred. If salvage harvest is being considered in areas of  
42 natural disturbance, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.  
43  
44

1 2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings

2  
3 Road construction and use management (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and  
4 decommissioning) will be reported. Water crossings constructed, monitored and  
5 decommissioned will be reported.

6  
7 Information products associated with road construction and use management, and water  
8 crossings will identify:

- 9  
10 (a) the road identifier;  
11 (b) the road class;  
12 (c) the road activity (e.g., construction, decommissioning, maintenance,  
13 monitoring, access control);  
14 (d) the water crossing identifier;  
15 (e) the water crossing type;  
16 (f) the water crossing activity (e.g., construction, monitoring, removal); and  
17 (g) for water crossings that were constructed or decommissioned, whether a  
18 water crossing standard was applied or a Fisheries Act review was completed.  
19  
20

21 2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits

22  
23 Forestry aggregate pits that had aggregate extracted or rehabilitation activities will be  
24 reported.

25  
26 Information products associated with forestry aggregate pits will identify:

- 27  
28 (a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;  
29 (b) number of hectares requiring rehabilitation (i.e., current disturbed area);  
30 (c) number of hectares rehabilitated;  
31 (d) the date the pit was completely rehabilitated (i.e., latest date of complete  
32 rehabilitation as aggregate pit may be rehabilitated more than once); and  
33 (e) number of tonnes of aggregate removed from the pit.  
34  
35

36 2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration

37  
38 The assessments of regeneration that were undertaken will be reported.

39  
40 Information products associated with the establishment assessments will identify:

- 41  
42 (a) the disturbance group (i.e., harvest, natural);  
43 (b) the year of disturbance;  
44 (c) the year of origin;

- 1 (d) depleted forest unit;
- 2 (e) the SGR for the area assessed;
- 3 (f) the target silvicultural stratum;
- 4 (g) the establishment indicator (i.e., successfully established, not successfully
- 5 established);
- 6 (h) the assigned silvicultural stratum that was successfully established;
- 7 (i) the species composition;
- 8 (j) height; and
- 9 (k) parameters representing the number and distribution of trees as specified in
- 10 the SGR.

11

12 For stands that are not successfully established, the annual report text will describe any  
13 additional silvicultural treatments required and timing for the next assessment for  
14 establishment.

15

16 Information products associated with the performance assessment will identify:

17

- 18 (a) the assigned stratum (i.e., the forest unit and yield curve assigned at
- 19 establishment);
- 20 (b) the confirmed stratum;
- 21 (c) the species composition;
- 22 (d) breast height age;
- 23 (e) total height;
- 24 (f) age; and
- 25 (g) parameters representing the number and distribution of trees as specified in
- 26 the SGR.

27

28

### **3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS**

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the requirements described in this section will apply to the year five annual report and the annual report for the final year of implementation of the FMP (i.e., final year annual report).

Additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports for the Whitefeather Forest, and Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of the FMPM.

The year five annual report will include an assessment, analysis, and review of the implementation of the first five years of the FMP. The year five annual report will identify any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the achievement of objectives in the FMP. The year five annual report will be used in the development of the next FMP.

The annual report for the final year will update the assessment, analysis and review in the year five annual report to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

#### **3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis**

Tables AR-7 to AR-16 and the associated analysis will replace the similarly required tables and analysis in the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP). Where these tables are not available for an independent forest audit, the requirements of the IFAPP will apply.

##### **3.1.1 Harvest Area**

The annual report will include a table (AR-7) of planned and actual harvest area for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The trend analysis will discuss trends in harvest levels, the spatial distribution of harvested areas (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

The area of bridging operations identified in the first year of a FMP will be reported as harvested in the trend analysis in the final year annual report for the previous FMP.

##### **3.1.2 Harvest Volume**

1 The annual report will include a table (AR-8) of planned and actual harvest volume for the  
2 current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current  
3 and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

4  
5  
6 3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance

7  
8 The annual report will include a table (AR-9) of planned and actual renewal, tending and  
9 protection area for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss  
10 trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of  
11 objectives.

12  
13  
14 3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration

15  
16 The annual report will include a table (AR-14) that summarizes areas of harvest and  
17 regeneration for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss  
18 trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of  
19 objectives.

20  
21  
22 3.1.5 Forest Condition

23  
24 The annual report will include a table (AR-10) of forest condition for the current FMP and the  
25 previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and  
26 any implications on the achievement of objectives.

27  
28  
29 3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

30  
31 The annual report will include a table (AR-11) indicating the amount of wildlife habitat for  
32 the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current  
33 and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

34  
35  
36 3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment

37  
38 The annual report will include a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and  
39 assessment program (Part E, Section 2.1.4) from the annual reports, and assess progress  
40 made in implementing the planned program. Implications on the achievement of objectives  
41 will be discussed.

1 3.1.8 Mid-Plan Check

2  
3 The year five annual report will include a discussion on the results of the mid-plan check  
4 from the current FMP, including results from implementing any recommendations from the  
5 mid-plan check.  
6

7  
8 **3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances**  
9

10 The annual report text will describe any implications of the area harvested and new natural  
11 disturbances on the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern.  
12 Recommendations to be considered in the planning of future harvest areas will be  
13 documented.  
14

15  
16 **3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities**  
17

18 An analysis of silvicultural activities will be prepared by a registered professional forester  
19 and documented in the text of the annual report.  
20

21 The analysis will include a discussion of:

- 22
- 23 (a) planned vs. actual silvicultural activities and the identification of significant  
24 variances (AR-9);
  - 25 (b) planned (FMP-19) vs. actual silvicultural expenditures (AR-4), and the  
26 identification of significant variances;
  - 27 (c) planned vs. target forest units (AR-12) and any implications to forest level  
28 objectives;
  - 29 (d) planned vs. target yields (AR-13) and any implications to forest level  
30 objectives;
  - 31 (e) the effectiveness of SGRs (AR-14); and
  - 32 (f) the assessment of performance (AR-15).
- 33

34 The analysis will include conclusions and recommended changes for consideration in the  
35 determination of future silvicultural activities and expenditures, and the continued use of  
36 effective SGRs and yield predictions. The analysis will also document how implications to  
37 forest level objectives will be considered in future annual work schedules.  
38

39  
40 **3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling**  
41

42 In the preparation of a FMP, the development of the LTMD for the forest is based on a  
43 number of model assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2.4). The trend analysis for the  
44 implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 3.1) and the analysis of silvicultural

1 activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be reviewed. The text will discuss and compare  
2 assumptions and projections in the model with actual operations and results as reported in  
3 annual reports. Any issues identified with model assumptions, and conclusions and  
4 recommendations for modifications or refinements, will be documented in the text of the  
5 annual report.

6  
7

### 8 **3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement**

9

10 An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the FMP will be  
11 documented in the text of the annual report. The assessment of information provided in all  
12 of the annual reports for the current FMP will be considered. The independent forest audit  
13 action plan, and associated status reports that describe progress towards addressing  
14 independent forest audit recommendations, will be considered when assessing objective  
15 achievement.

16

17 A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in AR-16.

18

19 The assessment will examine management objectives, indicators and targets that were  
20 identified in the FMP for assessment at year five and the final year of implementation of the  
21 FMP. The assessment will consider and the text will discuss the following:

22

- 23 (a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and  
24 does the difference have implications on sustainability?
- 25 (b) Has the target been achieved, or is progress being made on achievement of  
26 the target?
- 27 (c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling  
28 assumptions and inputs?
- 29 (d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
- 30 (e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification  
31 to better represent the local forest?
- 32 (f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or  
33 make adjustments to the LTMD?

34

35 For appropriate management objectives in the FMP that are directly associated with one of  
36 the four categories of objectives required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994*  
37 (CFSA) the assessment will consider and the text will discuss:

38

- 39 (a) Forest Diversity
  - 40 (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
  - 41 (ii) Do the forest condition trends in AR-10 indicate progress towards the  
42 desired forest condition?
  - 43 (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?

- 1 (iv) Are there any factors that may be interfering with forest diversity  
2 objective achievement?  
3 (b) Social and Economic  
4 (i) Does the data in AR-1 and AR-2 of this annual report and in equivalent  
5 tables in previous annual reports for the FMP indicate that the available  
6 harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?  
7 (ii) Do the trends in AR-10 indicate a concern with the area available for  
8 forest management?  
9 (iii) Did implementation of the FMP contribute to mill and community  
10 stability?  
11 (iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?  
12 (c) Forest Cover  
13 (i) Were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species achieved?  
14 (ii) Do the trends in AR-11 indicate a concern with the area of habitat for  
15 any selected wildlife species?  
16 (d) Silviculture  
17 (i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?  
18 (ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?  
19 (iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?  
20

21 If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons, a discussion of the  
22 management implications, and recommendations for future planning.  
23  
24

### 25 3.5.1 Risk Assessment

26  
27 The risks identified with implementation of the LTMD (Part B, Section 3.7.6) will be assessed  
28 to identify any implications on objective achievement. A discussion of any management  
29 implications and recommendations for future planning will be documented in the text of the  
30 annual report.  
31  
32

## 33 3.6 Determination of Sustainability

34  
35 The determination of sustainability in the year five and final year annual reports will  
36 conclude whether the implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability (i.e.,  
37 long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a  
38 collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will  
39 conclude whether a balance of social, economic and environmental objectives is being  
40 achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.  
41  
42

1 The determination of sustainability will consider the following questions:  
2

- 3 (a) are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the  
4 desirable levels for the indicators?
- 5 (b) is there a relationship between the objectives that are not within, or moving  
6 towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective  
7 achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular CFSA objective  
8 category (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1))?
- 9 (c) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the  
10 desirable levels related to limitations imposed by the current forest  
11 condition?
- 12 (d) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the  
13 desirable levels related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
- 14 (e) are actual operations and results as reported in annual reports consistent  
15 with assumptions and projections in the model and FMP?
- 16 (f) have the components of the independent forest audit action plan that pertain  
17 to objective achievement and sustainability been implemented?  
18

19 Documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the  
20 annual report. The documentation will:  
21

- 22 (a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives and provide  
23 rationale for any management objectives where desirable levels are not  
24 achieved; and
- 25 (b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations  
26 has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.  
27  
28

### 29 **3.7 Considerations for the Mid-Plan Check**

30  
31 The final year annual report will document any conclusions and recommendations (Part E,  
32 Section 3.1.1 to Part E, Section 3.6) that should be considered in the preparation of the mid-  
33 plan check for the next FMP.  
34

1 **4.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW**

2  
3 **4.1 All Annual Reports**

4  
5 Before the submission of the annual report to MNRF, the plan author will ensure the annual  
6 report:

- 7  
8 a) is complete and meets the content requirements of the FMPM and the FIM;  
9 b) calculations are correct;  
10 c) is structured consistent with Part E of this manual;  
11 d) is edited for ease of understanding; and  
12 e) contains page and line numbers.

13  
14 The plan author will submit the annual report to MNRF by November 15 in accordance with  
15 the requirements of the FIM and Part E of this manual.

16  
17 MNRF will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy.  
18 Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will provide the results of the review to  
19 the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address  
20 the comments and provide the MNRF with documentation on how the comments have been  
21 addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60  
22 days from the receipt of the MNRF comments.

23  
24 The plan author will present the completed annual report to the local citizens' committee  
25 (LCC), in a manner determined by the MNRF district manager in consultation with the  
26 committee.

27  
28 The annual report will remain available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on  
29 the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First  
30 Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office  
31 to discuss the annual report.

32  
33  
34 **4.2 Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports**

35  
36 MNRF will review the year five and final year annual reports, over a period of 30 days  
37 commencing November 15, or on the submission date if received after November 15. The  
38 MNRF district manager and regional resources manager will forward the list of required  
39 alterations, if any, to the plan author. The plan author will address the required alterations  
40 and provide the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager with  
41 documentation on how the alterations have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised  
42 annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60 days from the receipt of the MNRF  
43 required alterations.

- 1 After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF district  
2 manager and regional resources manager, the MNRF district manager and regional resources  
3 manager will sign the annual report - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part E, Figure E-  
4 1) and recommend the annual report for approval by the MNRF regional director. The FIM  
5 provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual  
6 reports.  
7
- 8 If requested by the MNRF regional director, the plan author and representatives of the  
9 planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the  
10 annual report to the MNRF regional director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional  
11 resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the  
12 presentation.  
13
- 14 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager’s and regional  
15 resources manager’s recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the annual  
16 report, normally by March 1. The MNRF regional director will sign the year five and final year  
17 annual reports – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) submitted by the plan author.  
18

1 **5.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES**

2

3 The tables in this section are required for annual reports. AR-1 to AR-6 are required for all  
4 annual reports. AR-7 to AR-16 are required for the year five and final year annual reports.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6

**AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee**

	Licencee or Grouping	Harvest Area (ha)	Product	Harvest Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )											Total
				Conifer						Hardwood					
<b>A. Harvest</b>															
Volume Utilized This Year															
			Total												
<b>B. Salvage</b>															
Volume Utilized This Year															
			Total												

7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

**AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee**

This table summarizes the actual volumes utilized by licensee or grouping, and by product. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Part A. Harvest:**

Complete this section for all invoiced and undersize and defect harvest volumes, except salvage harvest volumes. All second-pass harvest volumes are included as well.

**Part B. Salvage**

Complete this section for invoiced and undersize and defect salvage harvest volumes only.

**Licensee or Grouping:**

List all licensees or groupings that conducted harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. Where the SFL holder is the only licensee, identify the SFL name.

**Harvest Area:**

Enter the area harvested in hectares by licensee or grouping.

**Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer, bioproduct) for the actual volumes utilized.

**Harvest Volume by Species:**

For Part A and Part B enter the utilized volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product utilized from harvest area by licensee or grouping.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4

5 **AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

6

Mill	Product	Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )												Total
		Conifer							Hardwood					
									Subtotal					
<b>Total</b>														

7  
8

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23

**AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table summarizes actual volume (i.e., harvest and salvage combined) utilized by mills that received wood from the management unit, by product type and species. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Mill:**

List all mills that received wood from the management unit.

**Product:**

Enter the product type (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, bioproduct) utilized by each mill.

**Volume by Species:**

Enter the volume by species and product that was utilized by each mill. Ensure the total volume utilized by species is consistent with the volumes in AR-1.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5 **AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support**  
 6

**A. Seed Collected**

Species	Seed Zone	Source of Seed Collection	Number of Seeds (000s)	
			This Year	To Date

**B. Seeding**

Species	Seed Zone	Source of Seed Collection	Number of Seeds Used (000s)	
			This Year	To Date

**C. Tree Planting**

Species	Seed Zone	Source of Seed Collection	Number of Trees Planted (000s)	
			This Year	To Date

7  
 8

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support**

This table summarizes renewal support, including number of seeds collected, the number of seeds used for direct seeding, and the number of trees planted. Seeds used and trees planted are recorded for renewal and retreatment/supplemental treatment.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**A. Seed Collected/B. Seeding/C. Tree Planting**

Complete applicable table section for seed collected, seed used for seeding, and trees planted.

**Species:**

Enter the tree species.

**Seed Zone:**

Enter the seed zone for the seed collected, seed used for direct seeding, or the seed for planting (i.e., nursery) stock.

**Source of Seed Collection:**

Identify the source of the seed collected and used (e.g., bulk stand, seed collection area, seed production area, or seed orchard).

**A. Seed Collected: Number of Seeds (000s):**

This Year: Enter the number of seeds (000s) collected or purchased by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the number of seeds (000s) collected or purchased by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type from the start of the plan period.

**B. Seeding: Number of Seeds Used (000s):**

This Year: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year. Do not include seed used to produce nursery stock.

To Date: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7

**C. Tree Planting: Number of Trees Planted (000s):**

This Year: Enter the number (000s) of trees (i.e., nursery stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the amount (000s) of trees (i.e., nursery stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4

5 **AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures**

6

<b>Expenditures (\$)</b>				
<b>Activity</b>	<b>Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)</b>		<b>Forestry Futures Trust (000s \$)</b>	
	<b>This Year</b>	<b>To Date</b>	<b>This Year</b>	<b>To Date</b>
<b>Natural Regeneration</b>				
<b>Tree Marking</b>				
<b>Artificial Regeneration</b>				
<b>Site Preparation</b>				
<b>Tending</b>				
<b>Renewal Support</b>				
<b>Silvicultural Surveys</b>				
<b>Other Eligible Silviculture Work</b>				
<b>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</b>				
<b>Total</b>				

7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures**

This table summarizes expenditures made by activity and funding source.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Expenditures:**

Enter expenditures by the broad activity categories listed. Protection expenditures are not an eligible expense from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account.

**Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust (000s \$):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Enter actual expenditures for the report year, and actual expenditures to date from FMP start. Do not include HST in amounts reported.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration** - Activities include harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting, and scarification.

**Tree Marking** - Activities include tree marking for harvest using the selection and shelterwood silvicultural system. Boundary marking is ineligible.

**Artificial Regeneration** - Activities include tree planting (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings) and seeding (e.g., aerial and with site preparation).

**Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical, including cost of chemicals, chipper and debris piling, and prescribed burn.

**Tending** - Activities include spacing, thinning (i.e., pre-commercial), improvement cut (i.e., even-aged, uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings).

**Silvicultural Surveys** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., establishment, performance, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Other Eligible Silvicultural Work (ESW)** – Includes associated administrative overhead.

- 1            **Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.



## **INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35

### **AR-5: Annual Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests**

This table summarizes planned and completed pesticide applications, including spray period, site of application, pesticide used, exterminator, aircraft, and incidents/complaints.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, annual report year, year of application, application type, purpose of application, pesticide/PCP number, concentration (grams/litre), operator, operator licence #, MOECC regional office, and MOECC permit number.

#### **Spray Period:**

Enter the start and end date for each application site.

#### **Site of Application:**

Enter the OBM map sheet zone, easting and northing, and block number for each application site.

#### **Pesticide Used:**

Enter the number of applications, application rate (kilograms/hectare), proposed size of treatment area (hectares), actual size of treatment area (hectares), and the total quantity of pesticide product used (kilograms active ingredient).

#### **Exterminator:**

Identify the name and number of the exterminator.

#### **Aircraft:**

Enter the aircraft registration number.

#### **Incidents / Complaints:**

Indicate if incidents occurred or complaints were received (yes/no). For incidents or complaints enter the reference number supplied by MOECC pesticides specialist

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO  
 4

5 **AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied**  
 6

Forest Operations Inspected	Industry Reports			MNRF Reports			Industry + MNRF Total			Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports	Non-Compliance		Remedy Applied						
	Number in Compliance	Number Not In Compliance	Total Number	Number in Compliance	Number Not In Compliance	Total Number	In Compliance	Not In Compliance	Total Number Reports		Activity	Number Non-Compliance	Written Warning	Remedy Order(s) Issued			s. 58 Penalty Levied	s. 64 Offence Levied	s.59 License Suspended/Cancelled
														s. 55	s. 56	s. 57			
Access											Aggregates								
											Area of Concern								
											Fire Prevention								
											Road Construction								
											Water Crossing								
											Other								
Harvest											Area of Concern								
											Cutting								
											Fire Prevention								
											Wasteful Practice								
											Wood Measurement/Movement								
											Other								
Renewal											Fire Prevention								
											Pesticide Application								
											Renewal								
											Other								
Maintenance											Fire Prevention								
											Pesticide Application								
											Tending								
											Other								
Total																			

7  
8  
9 Note:

10 Remedies are not always applied the same year that the non-compliance occurred. Numbers for Reports and Non-Compliance are  
 11 not comparable to the numbers for Remedies Applied.

12 Compliance reports with a pending status are not included in this table.

## **INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

### **AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied**

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection reports information collected by the SFL holder and MNRF, and the activities where non-compliances occurred. The table also summarizes the remedies applied during the fiscal year. The requirements for forest operations compliance inspections and reporting are described in the Forest Compliance Handbook. The inspections reported in this table are those that were conducted during the period of the annual report regardless of the year that the operation was conducted. The remedies reported in this table are those that were applied during the period of the annual report regardless of the year in which the non-compliance occurred.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

**Industry Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (i.e., Access, Harvest, Renewal, Maintenance):

Enter the number of reports determined to be in Compliance reports, the number of reports determined to be Not in Compliance reports, and complete the totals.

**MNRF Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (i.e., Access, Harvest, Renewal, Maintenance):

Enter the number of reports determined to be in Compliance reports, the number of reports determined to be Not in Compliance reports, and complete the totals.

The SFL holder will add together the numbers from the industry and MNRF submitted reports to populate the columns for the **Industry + MNRF Total Reports**.

MNRF will provide the Total Number of MNRF Non SFL Related Reports and the SFL holder will add these numbers to the industry Non SFL Related Reports to populate the column for **Non SFL Related Reports**. The SFL holder will complete the column totals.

### **Non-Compliances**

MNRF will provide the number of non-compliances for each activity by operation type.

### **Remedy Applied**

MNRF will provide the total number of written warnings, orders issued, administrative penalties paid, offence fines paid, and licences suspended or cancelled.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6  
 7

**AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area**

Area (ha) - Annualized										
PLANNED HARVEST				ACTUAL HARVEST						
Forest Unit	Past Plans			Past Plans			Current Plan			
	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	Planned Harvest	Actual Harvest	Projections	
									Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>
<b>Total</b>										

8

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area**

This table summarizes planned and actual harvest area by forest unit for the current and previous FMPs, and the projected harvest area for the current FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2.

**Area (ha) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest area (hectares) by forest unit for the applicable past FMPs and current FMP.

**Planned Harvest:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the planned harvest.

**Actual Harvest:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the actual harvest.

**Projected Harvest Area:**

Include information from the current FMP to reflect projections from the FMP LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6  
 7

**AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume**

Volume (000 m <sup>3</sup> ) - Annualized										
PLANNED HARVEST VOLUME				ACTUAL HARVEST VOLUME						
Species	Past Plans			Past Plans			Current Plan			
	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	Planned Harvest	Actual Harvest	Projections	
									Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>
<b>Total</b>										

8

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume**

This table summarizes forecast and actual harvest volume by species for the current and previous FMPs and the projected volume by species for the current FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

**Species:**

Enter the species.

**Volume (000s m<sup>3</sup>) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest volume (000s cubic meters) by species for the applicable past FMPs and the current FMP.

**Planned Harvest Volume:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the planned harvest volume.

**Actual Harvest Volume:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the actual harvest volume.

**Projected Harvest Volume:**

Include information from the current FMP to reflect projections from the FMP LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5 **AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**  
 6

Operation	Area (ha) - Annualized							
	PLANNED			ACTUAL			PLANNED	ACTUAL
	Past Plans			Past Plans			Current Plan	Current Plan
	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>	<year>
<b>Regeneration</b>								
<b>Natural</b>								
Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)								
Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)								
Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)								
<b>Artificial</b>								
Planting								
Seeding								
<b>Total Regeneration</b>								
<b>Site Preparation</b>								
Mechanical								
Chemical								
Prescribed Burn								
<b>Total Site Preparation</b>								
<b>Tending</b>								
Cleaning (Manual, Mechanical, Chemical, Prescribed Burn)								
<b>Spacing, Pre-Commercial Thinning, Improvement Cutting</b>								
Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)								
Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)								
<b>Total Tending</b>								
<b>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</b>								

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-9 Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

This table summarizes the annualized area of renewal, tending, and protection operations, including those associated with tree improvement. Planned and actual area from past FMPs and actual area from the current FMP are included.

Complete the table as follows:

#### **Area (ha) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual silvicultural treatment area (hectares) by treatment method for the applicable past FMPs. Enter the average annual projected silvicultural treatment area (hectares) by treatment method for the current FMP.

#### **Planned:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

#### **Actual:**

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. Include information from the current FMP to reflect actual for FMP start year.

#### **Renewal**

##### **Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting or seeding treatments.

##### **Site Preparation:**

Enter the area treated. Site preparation for natural regeneration is included in the area reported. For slash pile burns, report the area associated with the burned piles rather than the total area that provided the source of the slash.

1 **Tending:**

2 Enter the area treated by tending method. Areas reported as selection harvest under  
3 regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial, will also be reported as  
4 improvement cuts under tending.

5

6 **Protection (Insect Pest Control):**

7 Enter the area treated by protection method.

8

9 Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4

5 **AR-10: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest**

6

Forest Unit	Age/Condition Class	Area (ha)						
		Past Plans			Current Plan <year>			
		<year>	<year>	<year>	Plan Start <year>	Plan End <year>	Projections	
						Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>	
	Recent Disturbance							
	Below Regen Standard							
	0-20							
	21-40							
	41-60							
	61-80							
	81-100							
	101-120							
	121-140							
	141-160							
	161-180							
	181-200							
	201+							
	<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>							
	<b>Total</b>							

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-10 Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest**

This table summarizes the available managed Crown productive forest area (hectares), by forest unit and age, over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current FMPs as reflected in the applicable FMP tables (e.g., FMP-3). The source of the current FMP end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next FMP. For the year five annual report use the information submitted with the first four annual reports for the current plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

#### **Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2. For past FMPs use the forest unit in FMP-2 that best describes those used in the applicable past FMP.

#### **Age:**

Enter the age (e.g., 20-year age class, seral stage). This column is not completed for forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

#### **Recent Disturbance:**

Areas of stand replacing natural disturbance (e.g., fire) or harvested areas that have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding, or planting.

#### **Below Regeneration Standards:**

Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding, or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved FMP. Includes natural disturbances and harvested area.

#### **Area (ha):**

Enter the area of the Crown productive forest (hectares) by forest unit and age for the applicable past and current FMPs (e.g., FMP-3).

#### **Past Plans:**

Enter past FMP start year information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

#### **Current Plan:**

- 1 Include information from the current FMP to reflect FMP start and specific required
- 2 projections from the FMP start year. Insert the FMP start year or the projection year
- 3 as part of the sub-column heading. Include current FMP end information and insert
- 4 the FMP end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.
- 5
- 6 Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6

**AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

Wildlife Species	Area of Habitat (ha)							
	Past Plans			Current Plan <year>				
	<year>	<year>	<year>	Plan Start	Projections			Plan End
<year>				Short-Term <year+10>	Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>	<year>	

7  
 8

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

This table summarizes the area (hectares) of habitat for selected wildlife species over time. The source of the information is the model outputs from past and current FMPs. The source of the current FMP end data is the model outputs and applicable FMP table prepared for the next FMP.

Complete the set of tables as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Wildlife Species:**

Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species.

**Area of Habitat (ha):**

Enter the area of habitat (hectares) for the selected wildlife species for the applicable past and current FMPs.

**Past Plans:**

Enter past FMP start year information from at least three past FMPs, and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**

Include information from the current FMP to reflect FMP start and specific required projections from the FMP start year. Insert the FMP start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current FMP end information and insert the FMP end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6

**AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit)**

Current Plan Period:

Target Forest Unit Identifier	Total Future Forest Area (FU) (LTMD)	Total Area Assigned to Target FU to Date	Total Established FU	Total Assigned and Established	% Variance
Total					

Previous Plan:

Target Forest Unit Identifier	Total Future Forest Area (FU) (LTMD)	Total Area Assigned to Target FU to Date	Total Established FU	Total Assigned and Established	% Variance
Total					

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45

### **AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit)**

This table demonstrates the progress towards achievement of the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD. For each plan period the table provides a comparison of the planned future forest units from the LTMD to the assigned target forest units for the current and previous FMPs. The table will incorporate silvicultural decisions (e.g., changes to target FUs) made during current FMP and previous FMP implementation.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD, the planning inventory, the annual report harvest information product, SGR change layer, and the target forest unit from the assigned SGR for the current FMP and the previous FMPs.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Information will be reported by each FMP period.

#### **Target Forest Unit Identifier:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2 for the current FMP and applicable FMP table from the previous FMP(s).

#### **Total Future Forest Unit Area (FU) (LTMD):**

Enter the total future forest area by forest unit as identified in the LTMD results for the applicable FMP.

#### **Total Area Assigned to Target Forest Unit to Date:**

For the current FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target forest unit to date as identified in annual report harvest information product(s) using the target forest unit from the assigned SGR unless establishment survey information is available. For each previous FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target forest unit to date as identified in annual reports or as confirmed by establishment survey information.

#### **Total Established FU:**

Where establishment survey information is available, enter the total established area by forest unit.

#### **Total Assigned and Established:**

Add the total area assigned to target forest unit to date and the total established forest unit.

#### **% Variance:**

Calculate the variance (i.e., the Total Assigned and Established/proportion of Total Future Forest Unit Area x 100)

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6

**AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield)**

Current Plan Period:

Target Yield Identifier	Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD)	Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date	Total Established Yield	Total Assigned and Established	% Variance
Total					

Previous Plan:

Target Yield Identifier	Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD)	Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date	Total Established Yield	Total Assigned and Established	% Variance
Total					

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

### **AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield)**

This table demonstrates the progress towards achievement of the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD. For each plan period the table provides a comparison of the planned future yield from the LTMD to the assigned target yields for the current and previous FMPs. The table will incorporate silvicultural decisions (e.g., changes to target yields) made during current FMP and previous FMP implementation.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD, the planning inventory, the annual report harvest information product, SGR change layer, and the target yield from the assigned SGR for the current FMP and the previous FMPs.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Information will be reported by each FMP period.

#### **Target Yield Identifier:**

Enter the yields as identified in the LTMD for the applicable FMP.

#### **Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD):**

Enter the planned harvest total future forest area by yield as identified in the LTMD results for the current FMP and from the previous FMP.

#### **Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date:**

For the current FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target yield to date as identified in annual report harvest information product(s) using the target yield from the assigned SGR unless establishment survey information is available. For the most recently completed FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target yield to date as identified in the planning inventory for the current FMP using the target yield from the assigned SGR unless establishment information is available.

#### **Total Established Yield**

Where establishment information is available, enter the total established area by yield.

#### **Total Assigned and Established:**

Add the assigned and established area together.

#### **% Variance:**

- 1 Calculate the variance (i.e., the Total Assigned and Established/proportion of Total
- 2 Future Forest Yield Area x 100)
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4  
 5  
 6

**AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment**

Current Plan Period:

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit	Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area (ha)	Silviculture Ground Rule (Code by Plan Period)	Area Assigned to SGR (ha) (All Years)	Total Area Established	Remainder to be Surveyed for Establishment
Harvest/Salvage					
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

Past Plan Period:

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit	Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area (ha)	Silviculture Ground Rule (Code by Plan Period)	Area Assigned to SGR (ha) (All Years)	Total Area Established	Remainder to be Surveyed for Establishment
Harvest/Salvage					
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

### **AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment**

This table provides a summary, by forest unit and SGR, of areas depleted and the associated establishment assessment. The information is to be reported by the plan period when the area was harvested or naturally depleted. This table reports assessments for harvest, including salvage. The source of this information is the harvest and assessments of regeneration information products.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

#### **Past Plan Period:**

Enter the applicable plan period for the previous FMP(s).

#### **Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit:**

For the current FMP enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 confirmed at the time of harvest. For previous FMPs enter the forest unit from the applicable FMP table in the FMP at the time of depletion.

#### **Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area:**

For the current and previous FMPs enter the confirmed depleted forest unit area.

#### **SGR by Plan Period:**

For the current and previous FMPs enter the code for the SGR that was implemented as identified in FMP-4 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP. In the case where an original SGR was revised, enter the final SGR implemented. Harvested area not assigned to a SGR (e.g., roads, aggregate pits, and landings) will be assigned to "Null".

#### **Area Assigned to SGR (all years):**

Enter the total area currently tracking on the SGR.

#### **Total Area Established:**

Enter the total area accepted by MNRF (i.e., MNRF validation complete) as established for the applicable SGR.

#### **Remainder to be surveyed for Establishment**

Enter the difference between the total areas assigned to the SGR and the total area established (i.e., verified).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4

5 **AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance**

6

Confirmed Silvicultural Stratum	Plan Period	Area Assigned to Silvicultural Stratum (ha)	Assessment for Performance (ha)	Remainder (ha)
Total				

7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

**AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance**

This table provides a summary of the silvicultural stratum of areas depleted and the associated performance assessment. The information is to be reported by the plan period when the area was harvested, including salvage. This table reports assessments for harvest, including salvage. The source of this information is the assessments of regeneration information products and the planning composite inventory.

Enter the management unit name, the plan period, and annual report year.

**Confirmed Silvicultural Stratum:**

Enter the silvicultural stratum confirmed from the performance assessment.

**Plan Period:**

Enter the plan period at time of harvest.

**Area Assigned to Silvicultural Stratum (ha):**

Enter the total area currently tracking on the silvicultural stratum. This is the population from which the sample was selected for performance assessment.

**Assessment for Performance (ha):**

Enter the total area assessed for performance.

**Remainder:**

Enter the remainder of the area to be assessed to achieve the sample requirement.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: TO  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: TO

4

5 **AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

6

Management Objective	Indicator	Plan Start Level	Desirable Level	Timing of Assessment	Target	Plan End Level	LTMD - Projections		Assessment
							Medium	Long	
Quantitative Objectives									
Qualitative Objectives	Assessment:								

7

## **INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

### **AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators, targets and achievement, and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective at the end of the plan period.

Enter the management unit name, the plan period, and annual report year.

#### **Management Objective:**

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

#### **For each Quantitative Objective:**

##### **Indicator/Measure:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets, and projections.

##### **Plan Start Level:**

Enter the FMP start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for the ten-year period (e.g., available harvest volume)

##### **Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range, or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

##### **Timing of Assessment;**

Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e., FMP preparation, and/or FMP implementation)

##### **Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range, or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

##### **Plan End:**

Enter the actual FMP end level (i.e., may be to date activity levels from the annual report or FMP start levels for next FMP).

##### **LTMD Projections**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the LTMD, for the target year and for the medium and long term.

1 **Assessment:**

2 Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each  
3 management objective. The assessment will consider the FMP start, desirable, target  
4 and FMP end achievement levels, and the trend of the indicator over time.

5

6 For each Qualitative Objective:

7 Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text  
8 assessment of achievement of each management objective.

9

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1		
2		
3	<b>PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION.....</b>	<b>4</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions .....	4
5	<b>WHITEFEATHER FOREST .....</b>	<b>6</b>
6	<b>PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS.....</b>	<b>6</b>
7	<b>1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN.....</b>	<b>6</b>
8	1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning.....	6
9	1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders.....	6
10	1.1.2 Planning Team .....	6
11	1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference .....	6
12	1.1.2.2 Project Plan .....	7
13	1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information.....	7
14	1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction.....	7
15	1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge .....	7
16	1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	8
17	1.2.1 Introduction.....	8
18	1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors .....	8
19	1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations.....	9
20	1.3.1 Introduction .....	9
21	1.3.6 Roads .....	9
22	<b>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</b>	
23	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....</b>	<b>10</b>
24	3.1 Introduction .....	10
25	3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders .....	10
26	3.2 Planning Team.....	10
27	3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management	
28	Planning.....	10
29	3.6 Documentation .....	11
30	3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	11
31	<b>PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS.....</b>	<b>11</b>
32	<b>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....</b>	<b>11</b>
33	3.7 Long-Term Management Direction.....	11
34	<b>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS.....</b>	<b>11</b>
35	4.1 Introduction .....	11
36	4.5 Roads.....	11
37	4.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....	12
38	4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections .....	12
39	4.7.2 Exceptions .....	12
40	4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration.....	12
41	<b>6.0 DOCUMENTATION .....</b>	<b>12</b>
42	6.1 Supplementary Documentation.....	12
43	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>13</b>
44	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>13</b>

1	<b>3.0</b>	<b>ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL</b>	
2		<b>REPORTS .....</b>	<b>13</b>
3	3.1	Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis .....	13
4	3.1.6	Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species.....	13
5	3.5	Assessment of Objective Achievement .....	13
6	<b>6.0</b>	<b>REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION .....</b>	<b>13</b>
7	6.1	Introduction .....	13
8	6.2	Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation.....	14
9	7.3	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation.....	14
10	7.3.1	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five .....	14
11	7.3.2	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight.....	15
12	7.4	Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	16
13		<b>CAT-SLATE FOREST .....</b>	<b>17</b>
14		<b>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS .....</b>	<b>17</b>
15	<b>1.0</b>	<b>PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....</b>	<b>17</b>
16	1.1	Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning .....	17
17	1.1.1.2	Role of Elders .....	17
18	1.1.2	Planning Team.....	17
19	1.1.2.1	Terms of Reference.....	17
20	1.1.2.2	Project Plan.....	18
21	1.1.8	Assembly and Update of Background Information.....	18
22	1.1.8.1	Sources of Direction.....	18
23	1.1.8.14	Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge.....	18
24	1.2	Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	19
25	1.2.6	Primary Road Corridors.....	19
26	1.3	Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....	19
27	1.3.6	Roads.....	19
28	<b>3.0</b>	<b>FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</b>	
29		<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING.....</b>	<b>20</b>
30	3.1	Introduction .....	20
31	3.1.1	Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders.....	20
32	3.2	Planning Team .....	20
33	3.4	Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management	
34		Planning .....	20
35	3.6	Documentation .....	21
36	3.6.1	First Nation and Métis Background Information Report.....	21
37		<b>PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>21</b>
38	<b>4.0</b>	<b>PLANNED OPERATIONS .....</b>	<b>21</b>
39	4.5	Roads.....	21
40	4.7	Monitoring and Assessment.....	21
41	4.7.1	Forest Operations Inspections.....	21
42	4.7.2	Exceptions .....	21
43	4.7.3	Assessment of Regeneration .....	22
44	<b>6.0</b>	<b>DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>22</b>

1	6.1	Supplementary Documentation.....	22
2		<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>22</b>
3	<b>1.0</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>22</b>
4	<b>6.0</b>	<b>REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION.....</b>	<b>22</b>
5	6.1	Introduction .....	22
6	6.2	Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	23
7	7.3	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	23
8	7.3.1	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five.....	23
9	7.3.2	Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight.....	24
10	7.4	Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation.....	25
11			

1 **PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION**

2  
3 Part F describes requirements that are in addition to those described in Parts A, B, and E of  
4 this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) for the Far North management units that  
5 are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU).

6  
7 Section numbers of Part F correspond to the related sections of Parts A, B and E. New  
8 section numbers are introduced in Part F if no such related section exists.

9  
10  
11 **NOTICE:**

12  
13 On October 22, 2015, the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) submitted a request to  
14 the Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) to amend Declaration Order MNR-75  
15 (MNR-75) to add the Cat-Slate Forest to the Area of the Undertaking (AOU) as identified in Schedule  
16 1 of MNR-75.

17 This amendment would enable forest management activities to be conducted on the Cat-Slate  
18 Forest, as described in the MNRF request, in accordance with an approved Forest Management Plan.

19 On September 26, 2016, MOECC posted a Regulatory Proposal Notice on the Environmental Bill of  
20 Rights registry seeking input from Indigenous communities and organizations, stakeholders, and the  
21 public on the proposal.

22 As of the date that this Manual was approved, no decision has been made by the Minister of the  
23 Environment and Climate Change and the Lieutenant Governor in Council respecting the requested  
24 amendment to MNR-75.

25 If the Minister of the Environment and Climate Change, with the approval of the Lieutenant Governor  
26 in Council, amends MNR-75 to add the Cat-Slate Forest, as described in the MNRF request to MOECC,  
27 to the AOU, the requirements set out in this Manual, including the Management Unit Specific  
28 Direction for the Cat Slate Forest as set out in Part F of this Manual, will apply to the Cat-Slate Forest,  
29 subject to any conditions set out in MNR-75, as may be amended.

30  
31 **Phase-in Provisions**

32  
33 The requirements of Part F will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning  
34 Manual except as follows:

- 35 • Management Unit Specific Direction for the Cat-Slate Forest does not apply to the Cat-Slate  
36 Forest as described in the request by the MNRF to the Ministry of the Environment and Climate  
37 Change (MOECC) dated October 22, 2015 unless, and until such time as:

- 1           ▪ The Minister of the Environment and Climate Change, with the approval of the  
2           Lieutenant Governor in Council, amends MNR-75 to add the Cat-Slate Forest, as  
3           described in the request by MNR to MOECC dated October 22, 2015, to the Area of the  
4           Undertaking.

5

6 In the event that there is a conflict between any of the conditions set out in MNR-75, as may be  
7 amended, and Part F of this Manual, MNR-75 would prevail.

8

1 **WHITEFEATHER FOREST**

2  
3 **PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

4  
5 **1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

6  
7 **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

8  
9 1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders

10  
11 For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest  
12 management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders  
13 played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes  
14 provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building  
15 Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s  
16 customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior  
17 stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship  
18 traditions.

19  
20 Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering  
21 Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the  
22 Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of  
23 reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

24  
25 The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any  
26 Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens  
27 Committee (LCC). Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve  
28 MNRF of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

29  
30  
31 1.1.2 Planning Team

32  
33 For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to  
34 Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning  
35 team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will  
36 be identified by the community’s leadership.

37  
38  
39 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

40  
41 For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

1 (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather  
2 Steering Group, to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

3  
4  
5 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

6  
7 For the Whitefeather Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks  
8 that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.

9  
10  
11 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

12  
13 For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be available for the period  
14 of forest management plan (FMP) preparation will also include:

15 (n) Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

16  
17  
18 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

19  
20 For the Whitefeather Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for  
21 decision-making will also include:

22 (k) the existing approved land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest (Keeping  
23 the Land: A Land Use Strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and Adjacent  
24 Areas), or its successor.

25  
26  
27 1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge

28  
29 For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge will be part of the  
30 background information that will be available for use in planning, to support the  
31 incorporation of Pikangikum customary stewardship practices. Pikangikum Indigenous  
32 knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings  
33 that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Pikangikum people.

34  
35 Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not  
36 limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites,  
37 ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including  
38 appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be  
39 documented on the values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may be documented in  
40 the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

41  
42 Many aspects of Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are  
43 intimately tied to language. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through

1 demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Pikangikum  
2 Indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be  
3 the Pikangikum people, particularly the elders.

4  
5 The approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management  
6 planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part  
7 A, Section 3.6.1).

## 10 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

### 11 1.2.1 Introduction

12  
13  
14 For the Whitefeather Forest, in the development of the long-term management direction  
15 (LTMD), the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e. spatially and  
16 temporally) of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The  
17 planning team will be guided by MNR policy direction for Caribou (Boreal population), and  
18 the strategic land use direction for caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to  
19 time.

20  
21 A description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou  
22 (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary  
23 documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the LTMD provides  
24 for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather  
25 Forest.

### 26 27 28 1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

29  
30 For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-  
31 year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will  
32 be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*,  
33 and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the  
34 Whitefeather Forest.

35  
36 A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has  
37 addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and  
38 the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the  
39 Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the  
40 supplementary documentation of the FMP.

41  
42

1 **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

2  
3 1.3.1 Introduction

4  
5 For the Whitefeather Forest, in the planning of forest operations for the ten-year period, the  
6 planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of  
7 habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will  
8 be guided by MNRF policy direction for Caribou (Boreal population), and the strategic land  
9 use direction for caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

10  
11 A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a  
12 continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will  
13 be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated  
14 description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous  
15 supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest.

16  
17  
18 1.3.6 Roads

19  
20 For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational  
21 roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning  
22 team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping*  
23 *the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature  
24 of the Whitefeather Forest.

25  
26 A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year  
27 period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the*  
28 *Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of  
29 the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP  
30 will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational  
31 roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and  
32 management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain  
33 remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

1 **3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND**  
2 **CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

3  
4 **3.1 Introduction**

5  
6 3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders  
7

8 For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest  
9 management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders  
10 played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and includes  
11 provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building  
12 Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s  
13 customary decision-making approach and is associated with the role of the elders as senior  
14 stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship  
15 traditions.  
16

17 Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering  
18 Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the  
19 Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of  
20 reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
21

22 The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any  
23 Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication  
24 with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult  
25 with Pikangikum First Nation.  
26  
27

28 **3.2 Planning Team**  
29

30 For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to  
31 Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning  
32 team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will  
33 be identified by the community’s leadership.  
34  
35

36 **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management**  
37 **Planning**  
38

39 For the Whitefeather Forest, the consultation approach for Pikangikum First Nation will  
40 provide an opportunity for Pikangikum First Nation to build community consensus prior to  
41 each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation  
42 opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation or Métis community. The  
43 consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous

1 knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of  
2 Pikangikum community input.

### 3.6 Documentation

#### 3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

For the Whitefeather Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

- (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

## PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

### 3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

#### 3.7 Long-Term Management Direction

A description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

### 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

#### 4.1 Introduction

A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

#### 4.5 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1 **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

2

3 4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

4

5 For the Whitefeather Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the  
6 opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other  
7 community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

8

9

10 4.7.2 Exceptions

11

12 For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- 13 (e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers,  
14 and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous  
15 knowledge.

16

17

18 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

19

20 For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration  
21 will also include the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders,  
22 trappers and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous  
23 knowledge.

24

25

26 **6.0 DOCUMENTATION**

27

28 **6.1 Supplementary Documentation**

29

30 For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- 31 (p) a description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for  
32 Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;
- 33 (q) a description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide  
34 for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the  
35 Whitefeather Forest;
- 36 (r) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and  
37 operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the  
38 direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land; and
- 39 (s) the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining  
40 feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

41

42

1 **PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

2  
3 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

4  
5 For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for  
6 Pikangikum First Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

7  
8  
9 **3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR**  
10 **ANNUAL REPORTS**

11  
12 **3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis**

13  
14 3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

15  
16 For the Whitefeather Forest, Caribou (Boreal population) will be one of the wildlife species  
17 included in AR-11. The analysis of the information in AR-11 will include a discussion of trends  
18 for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat, and any implications for the achievement of the  
19 management objective for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat in the current FMP.

20  
21  
22 **3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement**

23  
24 For the Whitefeather Forest, the management objective for Caribou (Boreal population)  
25 habitat in the current FMP will be one of the objectives included in AR-16. The summary of  
26 the assessment of objective achievement in the text of the management unit annual report  
27 will include a discussion of the achievement of the habitat target for Caribou (Boreal  
28 population) in the current FMP, and any concerns arising from the analysis of trends for  
29 Caribou (Boreal population) habitat (Part E, Section 3.1.6).

30  
31  
32 **6.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION**

33  
34 **6.1 Introduction**

35  
36 For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for  
37 Pikangikum First Nation. Those reports include:

- 38 (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part E, Section 6.2);  
39 (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth  
40 years (Part E, Section 6.3); and  
41 (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion  
42 of plan implementation (Part E, Section 6.4).

1 **6.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

2  
3 In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on  
4 FMP implementation for the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering  
5 Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to  
6 MNRF in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

7 The contents of the report will include:

- 8 (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of  
9 Pikangikum First Nation during the year, including employment in forest  
10 operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;  
11 (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;  
12 (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and  
13 (d) the names of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community  
14 members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the  
15 year.

16 The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
17 the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group, which may involve  
18 an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for  
19 the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of  
20 the report.

21  
22

23 **7.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

24  
25 In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee,  
26 with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Pikangikum First Nation in  
27 each of the fifth and eighth years.

28  
29

30 **7.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five**

31  
32 In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance  
33 of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First  
34 Nation.

35  
36

The contents of the report will include:

- 37 (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of  
38 Pikangikum First Nation to date, including employment in forest operations,  
39 wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;  
40 (b) identification of the Pikangikum First Nation traplines affected by forest  
41 operations to date;  
42 (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:  
43 (i) kilometres of road construction;

- 1 (ii) area of harvest;  
2 (iii) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn,  
3 mechanical, herbicides);  
4 (iv) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);  
5 (v) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g., manual, herbicides); and  
6 (vi) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);  
7 (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public  
8 access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been  
9 decommissioned to date;  
10 (e) a summary of the participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers  
11 and other community members in monitoring of FMP implementation to  
12 date, including a summary of the information recorded by Pikangikum First  
13 Nation participants; and  
14 (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that  
15 have been provided for Pikangikum First Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a  
16 summary of the participation of members of Pikangikum First Nation in those  
17 educational opportunities.  
18

19 The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation.  
20  
21

### 22 7.3.2 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight 23

24 In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the  
25 assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for  
26 Pikangikum First Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable  
27 forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will  
28 serve as a source of information.  
29

30 The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP  
31 implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:

- 32 (a) a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the  
33 achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of  
34 the goals and objectives in *Keeping the Land*; and  
35 (b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the  
36 recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending  
37 operations (Part E, Section 3.3).  
38

39 The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the  
40 planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year  
41 five management unit annual report will also be available.  
42  
43

1 **7.4 Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

2

3 In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable  
4 forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on FMP  
5 implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The final year management unit annual report  
6 that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the first year after  
7 completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

8

9 The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary  
10 report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

11

12 The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
13 the Pikangikum Chief and Council, the Whitefeather Steering Group and the Pikangikum  
14 community. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will  
15 be available to assist with communication of the report.

16

17

1 **CAT-SLATE FOREST**

2  
3 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

4  
5 **1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

6  
7 **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

8  
9 **1.1.1.2 Role of Elders**

10  
11 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding  
12 role in in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role  
13 that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the forest. The guiding  
14 role of the elders is a part of Cat Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s customary  
15 decision-making approaches, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards  
16 of the land who are responsible for passing on customary stewardship traditions.

17  
18 Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate  
19 Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the  
20 Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference  
21 for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

22  
23 The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat  
24 Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC.  
25 Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation  
26 to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

27  
28  
29 **1.1.2 Planning Team**

30  
31 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have  
32 representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls  
33 Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

34  
35  
36 **1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference**

37  
38 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

- 39 (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate  
40 Steering Group to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

2

3 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that  
4 are assigned to the representatives of Cat-Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation on the  
5 planning team.

6

7

8 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

9

10 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of  
11 FMP preparation will also include:

12 (n) Cat-Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s Indigenous knowledge.

13

14

15 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

16

17 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-  
18 making will also include:

19 (k) the existing approved land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest (“Niigaan Bimaadiziwin”  
20 – A Future Life), or its successor.

21

22

23 1.1.8.14 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge

24

25 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge  
26 will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning to  
27 support the incorporation of their customary stewardship practices. Cat Lake and Slate Falls  
28 Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and  
29 teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate  
30 Falls Nation people, as the case may be.

31

32 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters,  
33 including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and  
34 cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of  
35 behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this  
36 knowledge will be documented on the values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may  
37 be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A,  
38 Section 3.6.1).

39

40 Many aspects of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in  
41 nature, and are intimately tied to language. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is  
42 transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and  
43 teachings. To ensure Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is available for use in

1 planning, another source of information will be the Cat Lake and Slate Falls people,  
2 particularly the elders.

3  
4 The approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous  
5 knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis  
6 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

## 9 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

### 11 1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

12  
13 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year  
14 period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be  
15 guided by the direction for access development and management as set out in “Niigaan  
16 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
17 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

18  
19 A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has  
20 addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin”  
21 – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain  
22 remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The description  
23 will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

## 26 **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

### 28 1.3.6 Roads

29  
30 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads  
31 for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will  
32 be guided by the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan  
33 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
34 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

35  
36 A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year  
37 period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan  
38 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
39 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The  
40 supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the  
41 planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the  
42 direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future  
43 Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a  
44 defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

1 **3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND**  
2 **CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

3  
4 **3.1 Introduction**

5  
6 3.1.1 Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders  
7

8 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding  
9 role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that  
10 the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest, and  
11 include the provision for strategic advice, communication with the Cat Lake and Slate Falls  
12 communities, and building Cat Lake and Slate Falls community consensus. The guiding role  
13 of the elders is a part of the Cat Lake’s and Slate Falls ‘customary decision-making approach,  
14 and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are  
15 responsible for passing on Cat Lake and Slate Falls customary stewardship traditions.  
16

17 Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate  
18 Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the  
19 Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference  
20 for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
21

22 The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat  
23 Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC.  
24 Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation  
25 to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.  
26  
27

28 **3.2 Planning Team**  
29

30 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have  
31 representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls  
32 Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.  
33  
34

35 **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management**  
36 **Planning**  
37

38 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the consultation approach for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls  
39 Nation will provide an opportunity for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to build  
40 community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any  
41 corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation  
42 and Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to  
43 incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest

1 management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Cat Lake and Slate  
2 Falls community input.

3  
4  
5 **3.6 Documentation**

6  
7 3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

8  
9 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also  
10 include:

- 11 (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls  
12 Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

13  
14  
15 **PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

16  
17 **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS**

18  
19 **4.5 Roads**

20  
21 A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational  
22 road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access  
23 development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate  
24 Forest and the objective to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate  
25 Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

26  
27  
28 **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

29  
30 4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

31  
32 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the  
33 opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders,  
34 trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls  
35 Indigenous knowledge.

36  
37  
38 4.7.2 Exceptions

39  
40 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- 1 (e) the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation  
2 elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and  
3 Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.  
4  
5

#### 6 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration 7

8 For the Cat-slate Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also  
9 include the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation  
10 elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Indigenous  
11 knowledge.  
12  
13

## 14 **6.0 DOCUMENTATION** 15

### 16 **6.1 Supplementary Documentation** 17

18 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- 19 (p) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and  
20 operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the  
21 direction for access development and management in the community based  
22 land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest; and  
23 (q) the objective in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest to  
24 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.  
25  
26

## 27 **PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS** 28

### 29 **1.0 INTRODUCTION** 30

31 For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat  
32 Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for  
33 the reports.  
34  
35

## 36 **6.0 REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION** 37

### 38 **6.1 Introduction** 39

40 For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat  
41 Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Those reports include:

- 42 (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part E, Section 6.2);

- 1 (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth  
2 years (Part E, Section 6.3); and  
3 (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion  
4 of plan implementation (Part E, Section 6.4).  
5  
6

## 7 **6.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

8  
9 In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on  
10 FMP implementation for the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation  
11 Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group. The management unit annual report  
12 that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of each year will serve as  
13 a source of information.

14 The contents of the report will include:

- 15 (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat  
16 Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation during the year, including  
17 employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and  
18 management and administration;  
19 (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;  
20 (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and  
21 (d) the names of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and  
22 other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP  
23 implementation during the year.  
24

25 The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
26 the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the  
27 Cat-Slate Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products  
28 in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be  
29 available to assist with communication of the report.  
30  
31

## 32 **7.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

33  
34 In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee,  
35 with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Cat Lake First Nation and  
36 Slate Falls Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.  
37  
38

### 39 **7.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five**

40  
41 In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance  
42 of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation  
43 and Slate Falls Nation.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) identification of the Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;
- (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
  - (vii) kilometres of road construction;
  - (viii) area of harvest;
  - (ix) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
  - (x) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
  - (xi) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g. manual, herbicides); and
  - (xii) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);
- (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;
- (e) a summary of the participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of plan implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation participants; and
- (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

### 7.3.2 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:

- 1           (a)     a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the  
2                   achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of  
3                   the goals and objectives in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life; and  
4           (b)     a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the  
5                   recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending  
6                   operations (Part E, Section 3.3).  
7

8     The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in the early  
9     stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products  
10    in the year five management unit annual report will also be available.  
11

12  
13    **7.4     Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**  
14

15    In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable  
16    forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on plan  
17    implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The final year management  
18    unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the  
19    first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.  
20

21    The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary  
22    report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.  
23

24    The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
25    the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council, the Cat-  
26    Slate Steering Group and the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities. The information products  
27    in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with  
28    communication of the report.  
29  
30

1

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1  
2  
3 Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents..... 2  
4 Appendix II: Social and Economic Description..... 5  
5 Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form ..... 8  
6 Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form..... 14  
7 Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 20  
8

## 1 **Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents**

2

3 The analysis package will be used to document the information, assumptions, and decisions  
4 made during the strategic analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term  
5 management direction, and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The  
6 analysis package will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest  
7 management plan (FMP).

8

9 The satisfactory completion of each progress checkpoint will be documented in the analysis  
10 package and will include the following documentation:

11

12

### 13 **Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);**

14

- 15 (a) development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which  
16 forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted; and
- 17 (b) documentation of planning inventory checkpoint

18

19

### 20 **Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);**

21

- 22 (a) results of the planning team's review of forest classifications from the current  
23 FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing  
24 classifications;
- 25 (b) development of the base model inventory and forest classifications:
  - 26 (i) the manner in which the planning inventory products are combined,  
27 classified and updated in the base model inventory;
  - 28 (ii) the assumptions used to update and forecast forest classification  
29 information (e.g., management decision attributes);
  - 30 (iii) the assumptions, methodologies and rationale for the classification of  
31 forest units, analysis units, landscape biodiversity indicators and other  
32 classifications; and
- 33 (c) documentation of forest classification and current forest condition  
34 checkpoint.

35

36

### 37 **Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);**

38

- 39 (a) results of the planning team's review of base model assumptions from the  
40 current FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise  
41 existing model assumptions;
- 42 (b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year-  
43 five management unit annual report, was considered and incorporated into  
44 the model assumptions;

- 1 (c) if applicable, the manner in which management zones have been classified in  
2 the base model inventory and represented in the base model;  
3 (d) the manner in which reserves, anticipated reserves and modified harvest  
4 areas are represented in the base model inventory and base model;  
5 (e) methods and results for any sensitivity analysis conducted in the  
6 development of the base model assumptions;  
7 (f) growth projections and yield curves, and the source(s) of information used in  
8 their development;  
9 (g) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance  
10 assumptions);  
11 (h) silvicultural options;  
12 (i) management assumptions (e.g., including harvest flow rules, operability);  
13 (j) a digital copy of the model run for the base model; and  
14 (k) documentation of base model inventory and base model checkpoint.  
15  
16

17 **Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);**  
18

- 19 (a) results of the planning team’s review of management objectives from the  
20 current FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise  
21 existing management objectives;  
22 (b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year  
23 five management unit annual report and forest management guides, was  
24 considered in the development of management objectives;  
25 (c) summary of scoping investigations and significant conclusions or results  
26 including:  
27 (i) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and  
28 assumptions;  
29 (ii) results and conclusions that provide rationale for specific  
30 management objectives, indicators and desired levels and;  
31 (iii) a digital copy of a selected model run(s) that best represents each  
32 investigation;  
33 (d) documentation of management objectives checkpoint  
34  
35

36 **Support for the Proposed Long-term Management Direction, Determination of**  
37 **Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors (Part A, Section 1.2.7);**  
38

- 39 (a) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;  
40 (b) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;  
41 (c) a summary of changes to the base model and rationale for those changes;  
42 (d) a summary of modelling results including:  
43 (i) key results and conclusions that provide rationale for adjustment to  
44 targets, if applicable;

- 1 (ii) results of the risk assessment investigation(s);
- 2 (iii) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for
- 3 the proposed long-term management direction; and
- 4 (e) documentation of support for the proposed long-term management
- 5 direction, determination of sustainability and primary road corridors
- 6 checkpoint.
- 7

## 1 **Appendix II: Social and Economic Description**

### 3 **Part 1: Demographic Profiles**

5 The profile of each community identified in Part B Section 2.2.1 will contain the following  
6 data:

- 8 (a) population and labour force;
- 9 (b) community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of  
10 community resilience);
- 11 (c) household characteristics;
- 12 (d) individual income by gender;
- 13 (e) household income;
- 14 (f) educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community  
15 resilience); and
- 16 (g) labour force dependency ratios.

17  
18 The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the  
19 most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry  
20 of Northern Development and Mines, Regional Economic Development Branch is also a  
21 source for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the  
22 Statistics Canada web site (<http://www.statcan.ca>) under community profiles. A planning  
23 team representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the  
24 communities identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask  
25 them if they would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant  
26 insight. Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-  
27 friendly format, which may simply be as text.

### 30 **Part 2: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest**

31  
32 Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the  
33 baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management  
34 decisions in a FMP. The information in the description will be considered in the development  
35 of management objectives and the long-term management direction, and the planning of  
36 forest operations.

37  
38 The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where  
39 this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between  
40 management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and  
41 members of the public. Information may also be available from websites, reports, databases  
42 or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If  
43 businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the  
44 description, the efforts made to obtain the information.

1  
2 The description should be organized by sector.

3  
4 ***Forestry and Wood Products***

- 5  
6 (a) List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences, and  
7 describe wood supply commitments and wood supply competitive process  
8 conditional offers of wood supply that remain in force.  
9 (b) For each year over the past ten years, show the volume of wood from the  
10 forest, by conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by  
11 each receiving mill.  
12 (c) Describe the destinations of sawmill residues (e.g., chips, sawdust) produced  
13 by local sawmills that use wood from the forest for secondary products.  
14 (d) For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the  
15 management unit, describe:  
16 (i) the types of products made;  
17 (ii) employment (including mills, woodlands, woodlands contractors);  
18 (iii) ownership of the mill over the past ten years;  
19 (iv) recent major upgrades; and  
20 (v) any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.  
21 (e) Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last ten years, the actual harvest  
22 volume (i.e., merchantable, and undersize and defect), the total amount of  
23 Crown timber charges paid (sub-divided by stumpage payments, payments to  
24 the forest renewal trust and payments to the forestry futures trust), and the  
25 average Crown timber charges paid per cubic metre.

26  
27 ***Recreation and Tourism***

- 28  
29 (a) Describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, within and adjacent  
30 to the management unit.  
31 (b) For each lodge within or adjacent to the management unit, list the name of  
32 the business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile), and  
33 number of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels,  
34 the location of origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such  
35 relevant information. Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge  
36 can be accessed.  
37 (c) Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and  
38 employment (direct, indirect and induced).  
39 (d) Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a  
40 breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and  
41 induced employment.  
42 (e) Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as  
43 campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking,  
44 mountain biking, cross country skiing.

- 1  
2 (f) Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land  
3 camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.  
4 (g) Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made  
5 during the past ten years.  
6 (h) Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay  
7 information, etc.  
8 (i) Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not  
9 associated with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the  
10 number of clients such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the  
11 local and provincial economies.  
12 (j) Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the  
13 number of resident and non-resident licences issued).  
14 (k) Provide available data on use of Crown land within the management unit for  
15 recreation.

16  
17 ***Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation***

- 18  
19 (a) Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the  
20 management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount  
21 of mineral produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where  
22 available, discuss the revenue generated from the mine and employment  
23 (direct, indirect and induced). Discuss the economic contribution of mineral  
24 exploration activity on the unit.  
25 (b) Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount  
26 produced, as well as revenue and employment information where available.  
27 (c) Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the  
28 economic impact of the operation on the local area.  
29

30  
31 ***Traplins, Baitfish and Other***

- 32  
33 (a) Discuss the number of traplines on the management unit, the number of  
34 trappers and estimate the trapping revenue.  
35 (b) Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.  
36 (c) Indicate how many people are employed by the Ministry of Natural Resources  
37 and Forestry (MNRF) district office(s) associated with the management unit.  
38

## 1 **Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form**

2

3 This appendix is organized into four parts:

4

5 A: Primary Road Corridors

6 B: Branch Road Corridors

7 C: Operational Roads

8 D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

9

10

11 Complete Part A, sections 1 to 6 for each new primary road that is required for the next 20  
12 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

13

14 Complete Part A, section 7 for each confirmed primary road corridor that is required for the  
15 next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and  
16 1.3.6.7.

17

18 Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads, that is required  
19 for the ten-year period of the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, section  
20 1.3.6.2 and 1.3.6.7.

21

22 Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or a group of new operational  
23 road boundaries, for the ten-year period, in accordance with the requirements of Part A,  
24 sections 1.3.6.4 and 1.3.6.7.

25

26 Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road  
27 networks, that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and for roads that will  
28 be used for forest management purposes, if a use management strategy does not exist, or  
29 an existing use management strategy is being changed, in accordance with the requirements  
30 of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.7.

31

1 **A: Primary Road Corridors**

2

3 Complete Part A for each new primary road.

4

5 **ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

6

7 **1. Alternative Corridors**

8

9 Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

10

11 Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors  
12 for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

13

14 **2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors**

15

16 Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to stage two of consultation.

17

18 (a) Identify each alternative corridor (number) and provide a description and  
19 attach map at stage two and three of public consultation and/or reference the  
20 appropriate map in the draft and final plan;

21 (b) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

22 (i) discuss relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative  
23 corridors;

24 (ii) identify use management strategy(s) and if the use management  
25 strategy(s) differ discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of  
26 the alternative corridors (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7); and

27 (iii) discuss the relative costs of construction and use management of the  
28 alternative corridors.

29

30 **3. Summary of Public Comments**

31

32 Complete this section after stage two of consultation.

33

34 **4. Proposed Corridor**

35

36 Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

37

38 (a) identify the proposed corridor (number) and provide a description and attach  
39 map at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map  
40 in the draft and final plan;

41 (b) rationale for proposed corridor; and

42 (c) use management strategy;

43

1 **5. Summary of Public Comments**

2  
3 Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

4  
5 **6. Selected Corridor**

6  
7 If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further  
8 documentation is required.

9  
10 If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed  
11 corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of  
12 sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

13  
14 **7. Changes to a Confirmed Primary Road Corridor Road Use Management Strategy**

15  
16 **Use Management Strategy** (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7):

17  
18 Provide the rationale for the change in road use management strategy.

19  
20 Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

21  
22 **Summary of Public Comments**

23  
24 Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

25  
26 **Use Management Strategy**

27  
28 If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is  
29 required.

30  
31 If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management  
32 strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management  
33 strategy.

34

**1 B: Branch Road Corridors**

2

3 Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads with both a  
4 common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

5

**6 ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER(S):**

7

8 Provide the branch road name or a list of branch roads names, with both a common  
9 rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

10

**11 1. Proposed Corridor**

12

13 Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

14

15 (a) identify the proposed corridor(s) and provide a description and attach map(s)  
16 at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s)  
17 in the draft and final plan;

18 (b) rationale for the proposed corridor (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2, items (a) – (c));  
19 and

20 (c) use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)).

21

**22 2. Summary of Public Comments**

23

24 Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

25

**26 3. Selected Corridor**

27

28 If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further  
29 documentation is required.

30

31 If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the  
32 proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable  
33 requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use  
34 management strategy.

35

1 **C: Operational Roads**

2

3 Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or group of new operational road  
4 boundaries with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

5

6 **OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

7

8 Provide an **operational road boundary name** or a list of **operational road boundaries** with  
9 networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy and attach map(s)  
10 at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft  
11 and final plan.

12

13 **1. Proposed Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

14

15 Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

16

17 Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)):

18

19 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

20

21 Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

22

23 **3. Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

24

25 If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is  
26 required.

27

28 If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management  
29 strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management  
30 strategy.

31

1 **D: Existing Roads or Road Networks**

2

3 Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road  
4 networks with a common use management strategy.

5

6 **ROAD or ROAD NETWORK NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

7

8 Provide a list of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy  
9 (attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s)  
10 in the draft and final plan)

11

12 **1. Proposed Use Management Strategy**

13

14 Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

15

16 Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)):

17

18 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

19

20 Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

21

22 **3. Use Management Strategy**

23

24 If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is  
25 required.

26

27 If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management  
28 strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management  
29 strategy.

1 **Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form**

2

3 This appendix is organized into five parts:

4

5 A: Area of Concern (AOC) Description

6 B: Operational Prescription and Condition

7 C: Operational Road Crossings

8 D: Primary or Branch Road Crossings

9 E: Monitoring Program

10

11 Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas  
12 of concern with common values for which an operational prescription or condition is  
13 prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational  
14 prescriptions or conditions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

15

16 Complete Part A, Part C, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas  
17 of concern with common values which will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has  
18 received public comment at stage three of public consultation, in accordance with the  
19 requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

20

21 Complete Part A, Part D, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC which is crossed by  
22 a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
23 1.3.6.3.

24

1 **A: Area of Concern Description**

2

3 Complete Part A for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with common values, prior to  
4 stage three of consultation.

5

6 **1. Area of Concern Identifier:**

7

8 The AOC identifier may be numeric, alphabetic or any combination, and will uniquely  
9 identify either an individual AOC or a group of AOCs with a common value.

10

11 In order to link the supplementary documentation form, FMP-11 and the detailed  
12 operations maps for the ten-year period, the AOC identifier will be entered in the  
13 first column of FMP-11, and will also appear on the operations maps.

14

15 **2. Description of Value**

16

17 (a) description of value(s)  
18 (listed in order of importance);

19 (b) dimensions of AOC:

20

**1 B: Operational Prescription and Conditions**

2

3 Complete Part B for each individual AOC, or a group of areas of concern with common  
4 values, for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and  
5 environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the  
6 requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

7

**8 1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions and Conditions**

9

10 Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to stage three of  
11 consultation.

12

13 (a) alternative identifier/number;

14 (b) description of proposed operational prescription and condition:

15 (Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular  
16 harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)

17 (c) environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions  
18 Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b));

19

**20 2. Proposed operational prescription and condition**

21

22 Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription and condition prior to  
23 stage three of consultation.

24

25 (a) Description:

26 (b) Rationale

27 (c) Exception: (Specify if the operational prescription and condition is an  
28 exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page  
29 reference.)

30

**31 3. Summary of public comments**

32

33 Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

34

**35 4. Selected prescription**

36

37 If the proposed operational prescription and condition is selected, no further  
38 documentation is required.

39

40 If the selected operational prescription and condition is different from the proposed  
41 operational prescription and condition, complete the requirements of sections 1(a),  
42 (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription and condition.

43

1 **C: Operational Road Crossing**

2

3 Complete Part C for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common value, which  
4 will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has received public comment at stage three of  
5 consultation.

6

7 **Summary of Public Comments**

8

9 Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

10

1 **D: Primary or Branch Road Crossing**

2

3 Complete Part D if public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an AOC by  
4 a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
5 1.3.6.3.

6

7 **ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

8

9

10 **Summary of Public Comments**

11

12 Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

13

14

**1 E: Monitoring Program**

2

3 Complete Part E if the operational prescription and condition for the individual AOC, or a  
4 group of AOCs with a common value, which was prepared in accordance with the  
5 requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or  
6 recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest  
7 operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part E if the regular forest  
8 operations inspection program applies.)

9

**10 1. Proposed Monitoring Program**

11

12 Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

13

14 (a) Description;

15 (b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription

16

**17 2. Summary of Public Comments**

18

19 Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

20

**21 3. Monitoring Program**

22

23 If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is  
24 required.

25

26 If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program,  
27 complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.

28

## Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

The following operational standards apply to the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits:

1. Topsoil and overburden, where present, must be stripped and stored on site.
2. Aggregate material may be removed only within areas where access, harvest, or aggregate extraction has been planned and approved, with no removal occurring within 15 metres of the boundary of any planned area.
3. Aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern, except:
  - (a) for a cultural heritage landscape or historic Aboriginal value, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, if,
    - (i) FMP-11 of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, as per the advice of a qualified individual as defined by the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, and
    - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions; and
  - (b) for all other values, if,
    - (i) FMP-11 of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, and
    - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions.
4. Notwithstanding standard 3 above, aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern for the following values, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values:
  - (a) archaeology site;
  - (b) cemetery; or
  - (c) archaeological potential area.
5. When operating within 15 metres of a proposed roadside ditch, no excavation is to take place below the elevation of the planned depth of the proposed ditch; all excavations must be immediately sloped to no steeper than a 2:1 (horizontal: vertical) angle.
6. During extraction, no undercutting of the working face is permitted and:
  - (a) the working face must be sloped at the angle of repose; or
  - (b) the vertical height of the working face must not be more than 1.5 metres above the maximum reach of the equipment.

- 1 7. All trees within 5 metres of the excavation face must be removed.  
2
- 3 8. The maximum pit area must not exceed 3 ha. When a pit or a portion of a pit is  
4 rehabilitated, it is no longer part of the pit.  
5
- 6 9. When the site is inactive, all pit faces must be sloped at the angle of repose.  
7
- 8 10. Within the excavation area, no ponding is allowed and offsite drainage must be designed  
9 to prevent sediment from entering any water feature.  
10
- 11 11. Unless an aggregate permit (e.g., Category 9) has been issued, by the end of the 10-year  
12 period starting from the commencement of the forestry aggregate pit:  
13 (a) buildings, structures, or processing equipment must be removed from the  
14 site; and  
15 (b) rehabilitation of the site must be completed.  
16
- 17 12. Notwithstanding standard 11 above, MNRF may direct that a forestry aggregate pit be  
18 rehabilitated prior to the end of the above-noted 10-year period where the responsibility  
19 for the road and associated forestry aggregate pit is being transferred back to MNRF.  
20
- 21 13. Final rehabilitation must include:  
22 (a) sloping of all pit faces to a minimum of 3:1(horizontal:vertical);  
23 (b) re-spreading of any topsoil and overburden that was stripped from the site;  
24 and  
25 (c) mitigative measures, to the satisfaction of MNRF, to prevent erosion (e.g.,  
26 establishment of vegetation).  
27
- 28 14. Existing or proposed forestry aggregate pits within areas of concern, or in the vicinity of  
29 features that are addressed by conditions on operations, as described in MNRF's forest  
30 management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales,  
31 must not be constructed or operated except in circumstances as identified in the  
32 conditions on operations in the FMP. This includes any restrictions on the construction of  
33 new forestry aggregate pits and timing of aggregate extraction, rehabilitation, or other  
34 associated operations in existing pits.  
35
- 36 15. Progressive rehabilitation of the site must be ongoing during the 10-year period, starting  
37 from the commencement of the forestry aggregate pit.  
38

1

**GLOSSARY OF TERMS**

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

Aird	Aird, Paul L., "Conservation for the sustainable development of forests worldwide: A compendium of concepts and terms" <i>The Forestry Chronicle</i> . 70(6) (1994)
ARM	Access Roads Manual (August 1992)
CBS95	Canadian Biodiversity Strategy. Canada's Response to the Convention on Biological Diversity (1995)
CFSA	<i>Crown Forest Sustainability Act</i> (1995)
EAA	<i>The Environmental Assessment Act</i> (1975)
EA Decision	Environmental Assessment Board's <i>Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)</i> (1994)
EA Dec Order	Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry's Environmental Assessment Requirements for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (2015)
EALS	An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September, 1995)
ESA	<i>Endangered Species Act</i> (2007)
FIM	Forest Information Manual (2017)
FITC	Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988)
FMPM (1996)	Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests (1996)
Forman	Forman, R. T. T. and M. Godron. <i>Landscape Ecology</i> . John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1986)

1	FOSM	Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (2017)
2		
3	FRWCI	Forest Roads and Water Crossings Initiative, Task Team Report (2003)
4		
5	Kimmins	Oct. 3, 1993, Module 2.
6		
7	MFM	Manual of Forest Management Plan Requirements for the Province of Ontario (1977)
8		
9		
10	MNR 1997	A Silvicultural Guide to Managing for Black Spruce, Jack Pine and Aspen on Boreal Forest Ecosites in Ontario (1997)
11		
12		
13	MNR 1998	A Silvicultural Guide for the Tolerant Hardwood Forest in Ontario (1998)
14		
15		
16	MNR 2010	Forest Management Guide for Conserving Biodiversity at the Stand and Site Scales (2010)
17		
18		
19	MNRF 2015	Forest Management Guide to Silviculture in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence and Boreal Forests of Ontario (2015)
20		
21		
22	OG	Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forest (2003)
23		
24	PA	<i>The Pesticides Act</i> , Revised Statutes of Ontario, 1990, Chapter P.11. Printed by the Queen's Printer for Ontario (1993)
25		
26		
27	SFR	State of the Forest Report (2001)
28		
29	SM	Scaling Manual (2011)
30		
31	Smith et al. 1997	Smith, D. M., B. C. Larson, M. J. Kelty, and P. M. S. Ashton. 1997. The practice of silviculture: applied forest ecology. John Wiley, New York, New York, USA.
32		
33		
34		
35	STC	Silvicultural Terms in Canada. Science and Sustainable Development Directorate, Forestry Canada, Ottawa. 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition (1995)
36		
37		
38	URN	Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and Products are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971)
39		
40		
41		

1 **NOTE: *Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.***

2

3 **ACCESS**

4 The forest management operations of road construction, road maintenance, and the  
5 use management of roads to provide access to the forest for the harvest of the forest  
6 resource, transport of those resources to wood processing facilities, and forest  
7 management renewal and maintenance activities. (EA Dec Order)

8

9 **ACCESS CONTROL (roads)**

10 The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain  
11 specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

12

13 **AGE CLASS**

14 One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for  
15 classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

16

17 **AGGREGATE EXTRACTION AREA**

18 An individual polygon depicting a known site of aggregate within 500 meters of an  
19 existing forest access road that is outside: an approved harvest area; an operational  
20 road boundary; a primary road corridor; or a branch road corridor where a forestry  
21 aggregate pit is planned to be established.

22

23 **ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)**

24 A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and  
25 information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of  
26 the long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

27

28 **ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

29 A document, mainly in the form of tables and maps, which identifies the type and  
30 extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with  
31 the forest management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

32

33 **AREA CHARGES**

34 The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as  
35 required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the Regulations, and the licence.

36

37 **AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)**

38 A geographic area established for an identified value that may be affected by forest  
39 management activities. (EA Dec Order)

40

41 **AREA OF OPERATIONS**

42 A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands  
43 selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of  
44 a forest management plan.

**1 AREA OF THE UNDERTAKING**

2 The area of Crown land, on which forest management activities may be conducted in  
3 accordance with the requirements of EA Dec Order MNR-75 in Ontario. Forest  
4 management plans are prepared for management units within this area. (Modified  
5 EA Dec Order)

6  
7 The Area of the Undertaking is depicted in Schedule 1 of Declaration Order MNR-75.  
8

**9 ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION**

10 Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)  
11

12

**13 BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)**

14 The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including  
15 terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which  
16 they a part. (OG)

17  
18 **Biodiversity:** includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems.  
19 (CBS95)  
20

21

**21 BIOPRODUCT**

22 There are three categories of Bioproducts: bioenergy, biomaterials, and biochemicals.  
23 This list is not exhaustive and has been populated only to provide examples of the  
24 range of bioproducts that can be manufactured or produced from trees.

- 25 1. Bioenergy includes: liquid transportation (e.g. ethanol, biodiesel), solid biomass  
26 fuels (e.g. pellets, briquettes, chips) for the generation of heat and power, gaseous  
27 fuels (e.g. syngas) which can be used to generate heat and power, heat production,  
28 and electricity generation;
- 29 2. Biomaterials include: bioplastics (e.g. containers), and biocomposites (e.g.  
30 automotive parts) manufactured from tree fibres
- 31 3. Biochemicals include: bioindustrial chemicals, including basic and specialty  
32 chemicals and resins (e.g. paints, lubricants, solvents, dyes), biopharmaceuticals  
33 (e.g. antibodies, vaccines), and biocosmetics (e.g. makeup, soaps, body creams,  
34 lotions).  
35

36

**36 CLEARCUT**

37 Noun.

- 38 1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.  
39 2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently  
40 been harvested.

41 Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation.  
42 (Modified STC)  
43

44

**44 CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

1 A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new  
2 seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of  
3 all (or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or  
4 artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches.  
5 (Modified STC)  
6

## 7 **CONIFER**

8 Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones  
9 and needle-shaped leaves.  
10

## 11 **CONSERVATION**

12 Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest  
13 sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet  
14 the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation,  
15 maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of  
16 the environment. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is  
17 to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the  
18 ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)  
19

## 20 **CONTINGENCY AREA**

21 Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which  
22 cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency  
23 area will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if  
24 needed.  
25

## 26 **CONTINGENCY PLAN**

27 An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances  
28 affect the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency  
29 plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of  
30 the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation  
31 of the renewed forest management plan.  
32

## 33 **CORRIDOR**

34 An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a  
35 stream or route. (FITC)  
36

## 37 **CRITERIA**

38 **Harvest:** A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas  
39 that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period  
40 of the forest management plan.  
41

42 **Sustainability:** See Criterion

## 43 **CRITERION**

44 1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored

- 1 periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)
- 2 2. A category of conditions or processes by which sustainable forest management
- 3 may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that
- 4 are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.
- 5 3. A distinguishable characteristic of sustainable forest management; a value that
- 6 must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR
- 7 2001)

8

**9 CROWN FOREST**

10 A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty

11 in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources

12 and Forestry. (CFSA)

13

**14 CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT**

15 An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests

16 and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social,

17 economic and environmental needs of present and future generations. (Modified

18 CFSA)

19

**20 CROWN LAND**

21 Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.

22

**23 CUTTING CYCLE**

24 The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

25

**26 DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM**

27 Information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a

28 decision maker's own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a

29 specific decision.

30

**31 DECOMMISSIONING (roads)**

32 For roads or road networks identified for transfer to MNRF where MNRF's

33 management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the physical work that

34 will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public

35 safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water

36 crossing(s), site preparation and regeneration).

37

**38 DESIGNATED**

39 With respect to a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, "designated" means that all

40 of the applicable requirements under ss. 18(1)(a) through (d) and ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) have

41 been satisfied.

**42 DESIRED FOREST AND BENEFITS**

43 The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired

44 from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs.

1           The long-term management direction for the management unit is developed to  
2           achieve the desired forest and benefits.

3  
4   **DESIRABLE LEVEL**

5           The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a  
6           trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.

7  
8   **DISEASE**

9           Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally  
10          abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

11  
12   **ECOSITE**

13          An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of  
14          hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils,  
15          topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successional-  
16          related vegetation conditions.

17  
18   **ECOSYSTEM**

19          The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions,  
20          within a particular habitat. (STC)

21  
22   **ENVIRONMENT**

23          Has the same meaning as in the *Environmental Assessment Act*.

24  
25   **EXCEPTION**

26          A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the  
27          recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription  
28          or condition for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or  
29          recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest  
30          management guide.

31  
32   **FIRST NATION COMMUNITY**

33          A First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as  
34          determined by the district manager in accordance with Part A, Section 3.1.1 of  
35          this manual.

36  
37   **FISH HABITAT**

38          Spawning grounds and any other areas, including nursery, rearing, food supply and  
39          migration areas, on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their  
40          life processes.

41  
42   **FOREST**

43          1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation,  
44          growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);

1           2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and  
2           other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect  
3           benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).

4           3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

5

#### 6 **FOREST COVER**

7           All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

8

#### 9 **FOREST DISTURBANCE**

10           A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that  
11           alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.

12

#### 13 **FOREST DYNAMICS**

14           The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with  
15           growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

16

#### 17 **FOREST ECOSYSTEM**

18           An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological  
19           component. (CFSA)

20

#### 21 **FOREST HEALTH**

22           The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem's complexity while  
23           providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

24

#### 25 **FOREST MANAGEMENT**

26           Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the  
27           administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more  
28           particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative,  
29           economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical  
30           aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)

31

#### 32 **FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

33           A document of that name prepared in accordance with the Crown Forest  
34           Sustainability Act, 1994, for a management unit in accordance with the Forest  
35           Management Planning Manual. A forest management plan sets out the forest  
36           operations that may occur on a management unit by a holder of a forest resource  
37           licence while having regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and  
38           economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. (CFSA)

39

40           **Current Plan:** An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.

41

42           **Past Plan or Previous Plan:** The expired forest management plan for the plan period  
43           immediately preceding the current plan.

44

**1 FOREST OPERATIONS**

2 The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated  
3 purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related  
4 activities. (CFSA)

5

**6 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION**

7 A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal  
8 and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is  
9 managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

10

**11 FOREST RENEWAL TRUST**

12 A Trust that provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after  
13 March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been  
14 harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such  
15 terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

16

**17 FOREST RESOURCE**

18 Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the  
19 regulations that is in a forest ecosystem, (CFSA, section 3)

20

**21 FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY**

22 A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual  
23 geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about  
24 the timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species  
25 composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit  
26 divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-  
27 productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component  
28 by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

29

**30 FOREST STAND(S)**

31 An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition  
32 (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of  
33 trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

34

**35 FOREST TYPE**

36 A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar  
37 composition. (Modified STC)

38

**39 FOREST UNIT**

40 A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that  
41 will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both  
42 naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the  
43 same silvicultural system.

44

**1 FORESTRY AGGREGATE PIT**

2 An aggregate pit which is exempt from the requirement for an aggregate permit  
3 under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, as the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of  
4 this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied (formerly referred to as  
5 category 14 aggregate pits).

**7 FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST**

8 A Trust that provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may  
9 be specified by the Minister:

- 10 1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources  
11 have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
- 12 2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource  
13 licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
- 14 3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest  
15 resources in Crown forests.
- 16 4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.  
17 (CFSA Section 51(3))

**19 GUIDE (forest management)**

20 A Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry forest management guide described in  
21 the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* and any forest management guide that  
22 is adopted by reference in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual*. Forest  
23 management guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must  
24 be used in the development and implementation of forest management plans.  
25 (Modified EA Dec. Order)

**27 GUIDELINE**

28 A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction, but requires  
29 professional judgment for it to be applied appropriately at the local level. (MNR  
30 2010)

**32 HABITAT**

33 An area on which the species depends, directly or indirectly, to carry on its life  
34 processes including life processes such as reproduction, rearing, hibernation,  
35 migration, or feeding and includes places in the area that are used by members of  
36 the species as dens, hibernacula or other residences; or if the species is one for which  
37 a habitat regulation has been made under the ESA, the area prescribed by that  
38 regulation as the habitat for the species. (ESA)

**40 HARDWOOD**

41 Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle-bearing conifers. Also, the  
42 wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

**44 HARVEST AREA**

1       **Available:** The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the  
2       development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for  
3       harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

4  
5       **Contingency:** see Contingency Area

6  
7       **Eligible:** The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term  
8       management direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year  
9       period.

10  
11       **Optional:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or  
12       selected harvest areas.

13  
14       **Planned:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are selected for harvest  
15       during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with  
16       consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

17  
18       **Preferred:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest  
19       during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with  
20       consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

## 21 22   **HARVESTING**

23       The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes  
24       initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

## 25 26   **HARVEST METHOD**

27       A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest  
28       technique (e.g., *strip clearcut*, *group shelterwood*). (Modified FMPPM 1996)

## 29 30 31   **HARVEST VOLUME**

32       **Available:** The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with  
33       the Available Harvest Area, as determined in the development of the long-term  
34       management direction.

35  
36       **Planned:** The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with the Planned  
37       Harvest Area.

38  
39       **Utilized:** The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is projected to be utilized  
40       to meet Industrial Wood Requirements.

41  
42       **Unutilized:** The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is in excess of  
43       the Industrial Wood Requirements, which remains available for use by the forest  
44       industry.

1

**2 HERBICIDE**

3 Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody  
4 plants, and their seeds. (STC)

5

**6 IMPORTANT ECOLOGICAL FEATURE**

7 A subset of natural resource attributes that are normally common and widespread,  
8 are often transitory, are rarely identified in advance of operations, and typically  
9 require minimal modifications to regular operations (e.g., Conditions on Regular  
10 Operations) to ensure they are maintained or protected. Important Ecological  
11 Features include, for example, wildlife trees, grouse nests, and ephemeral flows,  
12 seeps, and swales. Important Ecological Features may also include a species at risk or  
13 its habitat.

14

**15 INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT**

16 An independently led review, in accordance with O. Reg. 160/04 under the CFSA, of  
17 the adequacy of forest management practices, controls and processes to ensure that  
18 the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with  
19 relevant legislation, policies and directives.

20

**21 INDIVIDUAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT**

22 An environmental assessment that is subject to the requirements set out in Part II of  
23 the *Environmental Assessment Act* (RSO 1990, chapter E.18, as amended).

24

**25 INDICATOR**

26 A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which  
27 when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in  
28 each forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management  
29 activities in achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the  
30 forest.

31

**32 INDUSTRIAL WOOD REQUIREMENTS**

33 Wood supplies from the management unit required to support the operation of  
34 existing and proposed wood processing mills. Industrial wood requirements are  
35 determined considering Crown wood supply commitments and offers, forecast  
36 operating levels of existing and planned mills, current and historic mill utilization, and  
37 business arrangements.

38

**39 INSECTICIDE**

40 Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of  
41 insects. (STC)

42

**43 LANDSCAPE**

- 1 A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is  
2 repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)  
3
- 4 A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.  
5
- 6 **LICENSEE**  
7 A person or company to whom a Forest Resource Licence has been granted. (SM)  
8
- 9 **LOCAL CITIZENS' COMMITTEE**  
10 An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the Crown  
11 Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.  
12
- 13 **LOGGING METHOD**  
14 A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to  
15 roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).  
16
- 17 **LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**  
18 The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and  
19 economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest  
20 and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.  
21
- 22 **MAINTENANCE (forestry)**  
23 The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to  
24 ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.  
25
- 26 **MAINTENANCE (roads)**  
27 **Routine:** Those activities necessary to maintain or upgrade a road and right of way  
28 for the traffic using it. Routine maintenance may include minor road re-alignment  
29 within the right of way.  
30  
31 **Emergency:** Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access  
32 and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to  
33 road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts,  
34 damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)  
35
- 36 **MANAGED FOREST**  
37 Crown forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents  
38 the land from being managed for forest management purposes.  
39
- 40 **MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE**  
41 A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions,  
42 developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the  
43 manipulation of forest cover.  
44
- 44 **MANAGEMENT UNIT**

1 An area of Crown forest designated under section 7 of the Crown Forest  
2 Sustainability Act, 1994.

3

#### 4 **MERCHANTABLE**

5 Timber or a tree that is merchantable as defined in the Scaling Manual.

6

#### 7 **MÉTIS COMMUNITY**

8 A Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by  
9 the district manager in accordance with section 3.1.1 of this manual.

10

#### 11 **MNRF**

12 MNRF means the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, or the ministry of the  
13 Minister that has been assigned to undertake responsibility for the Crown Forest  
14 Sustainability Act.

15

#### 16 **MODIFIED OPERATIONS**

17 Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed  
18 to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified  
19 operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or  
20 unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land  
21 uses or values.

22

#### 23 **MONITORING**

24 The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides  
25 information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and  
26 a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

27

#### 28 **NATURAL REGENERATION**

29 Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

30

#### 31 **NATURAL RESOURCE**

32 A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.)  
33 resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

34

#### 35 **OLD GROWTH**

36 A functional condition (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife habitat)  
37 of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features  
38 and characteristics that typically include:

- 39 1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size  
40 and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in  
41 species composition);
- 42 2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material,  
43 up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality.

#### 44 **OPERATIONAL PRESCRIPTION FOR AREAS OF CONCERN**

1 An operational prescription for areas of concern is a prescription prepared for  
2 harvest, renewal and tending and protection activities to prevent, minimize or  
3 mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on a natural resource  
4 feature, land use or value.

5  
6 **OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY**

7 The operational road boundary is the perimeter of, the planned harvest area plus the  
8 area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the harvest area within which  
9 an operational road is planned to be constructed.

10  
11 **OWNERSHIP (land)**

12 Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and  
13 other vested interest.

14  
15 **PATENTED LAND**

16 Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual,  
17 company or corporation in perpetuity.

18  
19 **PESTICIDE**

20 Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used  
21 as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating,  
22 attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or  
23 characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism,  
24 substance or thing registered under the *Pest Control Products Act* (Canada). (PA)

25  
26 **PLAN AMENDMENT**

27 Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is normally  
28 consistent with the long term management direction for the management unit. If  
29 there is a change to legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g. *Endangered*  
30 *Species Act*, 2007), a Regional Director of Regional Operations Division, Ministry of  
31 Natural Resources and Forestry, may request an amendment to a forest  
32 management plan or contingency plan that is not consistent with the long-term  
33 management direction. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text  
34 of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive  
35 planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and  
36 consultation.

37  
38 **PLAN AUTHOR**

39 The registered professional forester licenced to practice professional forestry, under  
40 the *Professional Foresters Act*, 2000, who is responsible for the preparation and  
41 certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan author of  
42 the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is  
43 deemed to be the plan author.

44 **PLAN PERIOD**

1           The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term  
2           management direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.

3

#### 4   **PLAN RENEWAL**

5           The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management  
6           plan. Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.

7

#### 8   **PRESCRIBED BURN**

9           The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish  
10          predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)

11

#### 12   **PRODUCTION FOREST**

13          Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical  
14          limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)

15

#### 16   **PRODUCTIVE FOREST**

17          All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of  
18          planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into "protection forest" and  
19          "production forest".(Modified EA Decision)

20

#### 21   **PRODUCTIVITY**

22          A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)

23

#### 24   **PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE**

25          An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels.  
26          Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*.

27

#### 28   **PROTECTION**

29          Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage  
30          the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may  
31          involve the use of insecticides or manual treatments.

32

#### 33   **PROTECTION FOREST**

34          Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be  
35          practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious  
36          physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified EA  
37          Decision)

38

#### 39   **REGENERATION**

40          The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to  
41          describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)

42

43          Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration

#### 44   **REGENERATION STANDARD**

1           The required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide  
2           confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved.

3

4   **REGION or REGIONAL**

5           In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural  
6           Resources and Forestry.

7

8   **REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)**

9           A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under the *Professional*  
10          *Foresters Act, 2000*

11

12   **REGULAR OPERATIONS**

13          Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with  
14          the silvicultural ground rules.

15

16   **RENEWAL**

17          The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment  
18          and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site  
19          preparation and regeneration.

20

21   **RESERVE**

22          An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

23

24   **RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT**

25          An agreement negotiated between a resource-based tourism operation as  
26          determined by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport, and a sustainable forest  
27          licensee.

28

29   **RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)**

30          The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e.,  
31          MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

32

33   **RE-TREATMENT**

34          A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and  
35          usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment  
36          is necessary.

37

38   **ROAD**

39          **Primary:** A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is  
40          constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on  
41          the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

42

43          **Branch:** A road, other than a primary road, that branches off an existing or new  
44          primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations

1 on a management unit.

2

3 **Operational:** A road within an operational road boundary, other than a primary or  
4 branch road, that provides short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending  
5 operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer  
6 required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and  
7 regenerated.

8

### 9 **ROAD NETWORK**

10 A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area.  
11 (Adapted FRWCI)

12

### 13 **SALVAGE HARVEST**

14 The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as  
15 fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

16

### 17 **SARO LIST**

18 The Species at Risk in Ontario list set out in O. Reg. 230/08 made under the ESA.

19

### 20 **SCARIFICATION**

21 Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in  
22 preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)

23

### 24 **SECTION 18 OVERALL BENEFIT INSTRUMENT**

25 An agreement, permit, licence, order, approved plan or other similar document  
26 entered into, issued, made, or approved by the Minister in relation to which the  
27 requirements of ss. 18(1)(a) through (d) and ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA have been  
28 met, and that therefore, has the same effect as a permit issued under section 17  
29 (2)(c) of the ESA.

30

### 31 **SEEDING**

32 A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less  
33 evenly, over an area.

34

### 35 **SEED ORCHARD**

36 A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent  
37 material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically  
38 improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

39

### 40 **SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

41 An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests,  
42 controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual  
43 tree selection. (MNR 1998)

### 44 **SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

1 An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of  
2 two or more cuts (preparatory, regeneration, removal, final) for the purpose of  
3 establishing regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting  
4 uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or  
5 artificial. Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity.  
6 (Adapted MFM)

7  
8 Also see Silvicultural System

#### 9 10 11 **SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES**

12 Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on  
13 a management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

#### 14 15 **SILVICULTURAL STRATUM**

16 An aggregation of forest stands for forest management purposes that are in the  
17 same forest unit and have the same estimated growth and yield.

#### 18 19 **SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

20 A planned program of silviculture treatments that extends throughout the life of a  
21 stand for the purposes of controlling stand establishment, composition, and growth  
22 (Smith et al 1997) (MNRF 2015).

#### 23 24 **SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT**

25 The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground  
26 rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

#### 27 28 **SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE**

29 A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit  
30 and ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired  
31 future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

#### 32 33 **SILVICULTURE**

34 Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of  
35 silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the  
36 establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

#### 37 38 **SITE PREPARATION**

39 Disturbance of the forest floor, topsoil, and/or competing vegetation, by mechanical  
40 or chemical means, or by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural  
41 or artificial regeneration. (Modified MFM)

#### 42 43 **SPATIAL**

44 Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location.

1 Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by  
2 geographic information systems.

3

4 **SPECIES**

5 A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that  
6 are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other  
7 species. (Aird)

8

9 **SPECIES AT RISK**

10 Any species, which is listed on the SARO List.

11

12 **STAGE OF MANAGEMENT**

13 One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and  
14 number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.

15

16 **STANDARD**

17 A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction. (MNR 2010)

18

19 **STAND IMPROVEMENT**

20 The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand,  
21 generally used in the selection silvicultural system.

22

23 **SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS**

24 Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest  
25 conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural  
26 expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Silvicultural  
27 options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic analysis.

28

29 **SUCCESSION**

30 Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable  
31 order. (Aird)

32

33 **SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT**

34 Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied when initial  
35 regeneration efforts are not expected to meet the regeneration standards.

36

37 **SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION**

38 The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports  
39 the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of  
40 the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and  
41 maps.

42

43

**1 SUSTAINABILITY**

2 Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)

3

**4 SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE**

5 A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act,  
6 1994.

7

**8 SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT**

9 The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which  
10 provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability  
11 criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic  
12 assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are  
13 conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable  
14 effects on the physical and social environments.

15

**16 TENDING**

17 Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of  
18 a forest. Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing  
19 vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand  
20 improvement or pruning.

21

**22 THINNING**

23 Thinning is a form of partial canopy removal in an established stand that  
24 concentrates potential wood production of a stand on selected trees (Smith et al  
25 1997). Secondary objectives may include compositional objectives or developing  
26 future seed producing crowns. Thinning may be used to influence wood quality and  
27 quantity and achieve specific management objectives (habitat, aesthetics, watershed  
28 management, etc).

29

30 **Commercial Thinning:** A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the  
31 site and used for commercial purposes.

32

33 **Pre-Commercial Thinning:** A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value,  
34 and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term  
35 pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only.  
36 Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as  
37 "improvement cutting" or stand improvement.

38

**39 TIMBER**

40 A wood material yielded by trees.

41

**42 TREE IMPROVEMENT**

43 The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments  
44 (e.g., tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.

1 **UNDERSIZE AND DEFECT**

2 Timber or a tree that is not merchantable, including undersize material and defects,  
3 as defined in the Scaling Manual.

4  
5 **USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)**

6 An approach outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and  
7 responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, decommissioning  
8 and monitoring of roads on Crown land.

9  
10 **VALUE (values maps)**

11 A term used to describe known natural, cultural or First Nation or Métis resource  
12 attribute or use of land, including all lakes and streams, which must be considered in  
13 forest management planning. (EA Dec Order)

14  
15 **VOLUME**

16 The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a  
17 unit of measure.

18  
19 **WETLAND**

20 Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land  
21 where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of  
22 abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the  
23 dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of  
24 wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (*Wetlands Policy*)

25  
26 **WILDLIFE**

27 Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

28  
29 **YIELD**

30 The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other  
31 specified area.

32

